



(51) International Patent Classification:

A61P 39/00 (2006.01) A61P 35/00 (2006.01)  
A61K 47/48 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/EP2013/071346

(22) International Filing Date:

11 October 2013 (11.10.2013)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

61/712,924	12 October 2012 (12.10.2012)	US
61/712,928	12 October 2012 (12.10.2012)	US
61/784,421	14 March 2013 (14.03.2013)	US
61/784,362	14 March 2013 (14.03.2013)	US
61/784,383	14 March 2013 (14.03.2013)	US

(71) Applicant: ADC THERAPEUTICS SÀRL [CH/CH];  
Rue Saint-Pierre 2, c/o Michael Forer, CH-1003 Lausanne  
(CH).

(72) Inventors: VAN BERKEL, Patricius Hendrikus Cornelis; ADC Therapeutics Sàrl, Rue Saint-Pierre 2, c/o Michael Forer, CH-1003 Lausanne (CH). HOWARD, Philip Wilson; Spirogen Limited, The QMB Innovation Centre, 42 New Road, London Greater London E1 2AX (GB).

(74) Agents: ANDREWS, Robert et al.; Mewburn Ellis LLP, 33 Gutter Lane, London Greater London EC2V 8AS (GB).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,

AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Declarations under Rule 4.17:

— of inventorship (Rule 4.17(iv))

Published:

— with international search report (Art. 21(3))

— before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments (Rule 48.2(h))

(54) Title: PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINE-ANTIBODY CONJUGATES

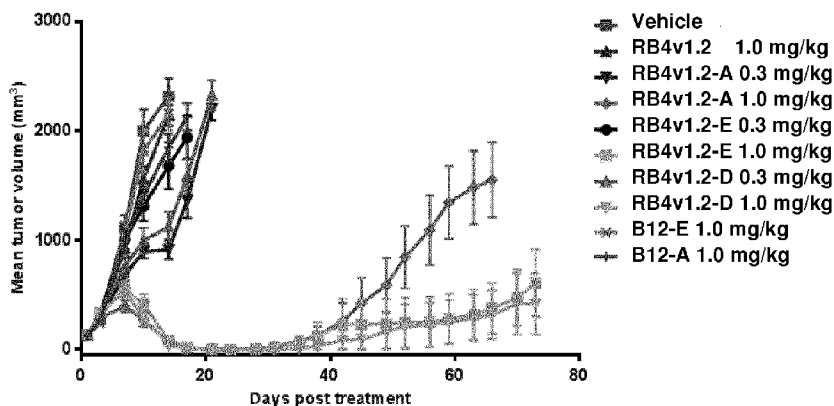


Figure 4

(57) Abstract: Conjugates of an antibody that binds to CD19 with PBD dimers.

WO 2014/057117 A1

## PYRROLOBENZODIAZEPINE-ANTIBODY CONJUGATES

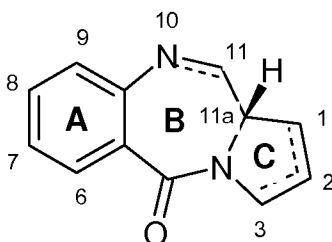
The present invention relates to pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs) having a labile C2 or N10 protecting group in the form of a linker to an antibody.

5

### Background to the invention

#### *Pyrrolobenzodiazepines*

Some pyrrolobenzodiazepines (PBDs) have the ability to recognise and bond to specific sequences of DNA; the preferred sequence is PuGpu. The first PBD antitumour antibiotic, anthramycin, was discovered in 1965 (Leimgruber, *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5793-5795 (1965); Leimgruber, *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **87**, 5791-5793 (1965)). Since then, a number of naturally occurring PBDs have been reported, and over 10 synthetic routes have been developed to a variety of analogues (Thurston, *et al.*, *Chem. Rev.* **1994**, 433-465 (1994); Antonow, D. and Thurston, D.E., *Chem. Rev.* **2011** 111 (4), 2815-2864). Family members include abbeymycin (Hochlowski, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **40**, 145-148 (1987)), chicamycin (Konishi, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **37**, 200-206 (1984)), DC-81 (Japanese Patent 58-180 487; Thurston, *et al.*, *Chem. Brit.*, **26**, 767-772 (1990); Bose, *et al.*, *Tetrahedron*, **48**, 751-758 (1992)), mazethramycin (Kuminoto, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **33**, 665-667 (1980)), neothramycins A and B (Takeuchi, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 93-96 (1976)), porothramycin (Tsunakawa, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1366-1373 (1988)), prothracarcin (Shimizu, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **29**, 2492-2503 (1982); Langley and Thurston, *J. Org. Chem.*, **52**, 91-97 (1987)), sibanomicin (DC-102)(Hara, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 702-704 (1988); Itoh, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **41**, 1281-1284 (1988)), sibiromycin (Leber, *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **110**, 2992-2993 (1988)) and tomamycin (Arima, *et al.*, *J. Antibiotics*, **25**, 437-444 (1972)). PBDs are of the general structure:



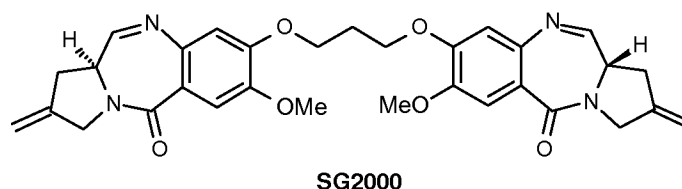
They differ in the number, type and position of substituents, in both their aromatic A rings and pyrrolo C rings, and in the degree of saturation of the C ring. In the B-ring there is either an imine (N=C), a carbinolamine(NH-CH(OH)), or a carbinolamine methyl ether (NH-CH(OMe)) at the N10-C11 position which is the electrophilic centre responsible for alkylating

30

DNA. All of the known natural products have an (*S*)-configuration at the chiral C11a position which provides them with a right-handed twist when viewed from the C ring towards the A ring. This gives them the appropriate three-dimensional shape for isohelicity with the minor groove of B-form DNA, leading to a snug fit at the binding site (Kohn, In *Antibiotics III*.

5 Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 3-11 (1975); Hurley and Needham-VanDevanter, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, **19**, 230-237 (1986)). Their ability to form an adduct in the minor groove, enables them to interfere with DNA processing, hence their use as antitumour agents.

A particularly advantageous pyrrolobenzodiazepine compound is described by Gregson *et al.* (*Chem. Commun.* **1999**, 797-798) as compound **1**, and by Gregson *et al.* (*J. Med. Chem.* **2001**, *44*, 1161-1174) as compound **4a**. This compound, also known as SG2000, is shown below:



WO 2007/085930 describes the preparation of dimer PBD compounds having linker groups for connection to a cell binding agent, such as an antibody. The linker is present in the bridge linking the monomer PBD units of the dimer.

The present inventors have described dimer PBD compounds having linker groups for connection to a cell binding agent, such as an antibody, in WO 2011/130613 and WO 2011/130616. The linker in these compounds is attached to the PBD core via the C2 position, and are generally cleaved by action of an enzyme on the linker group. In WO 2011/130598, the linker in these compounds is attached to one of the available N10 positions on the PBD core, and are generally cleaved by action of an enzyme on the linker group.

25

#### *Antibody-drug conjugates*

Antibody therapy has been established for the targeted treatment of patients with cancer, immunological and angiogenic disorders (Carter, P. (2006) *Nature Reviews Immunology* 6:343-357). The use of antibody-drug conjugates (ADC), i.e. immunoconjugates, for the local delivery of cytotoxic or cytostatic agents, i.e. drugs to kill or inhibit tumor cells in the treatment of cancer, targets delivery of the drug moiety to tumors, and intracellular accumulation therein, whereas systemic administration of these unconjugated drug agents

30

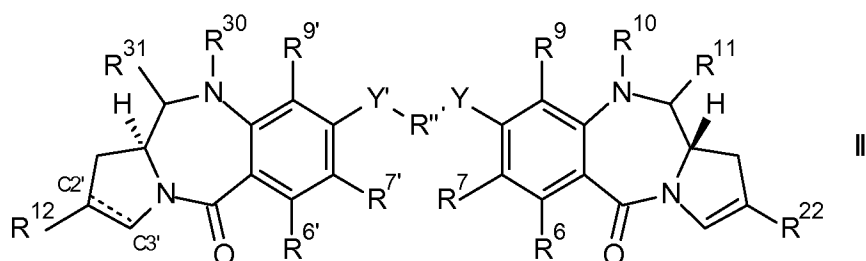
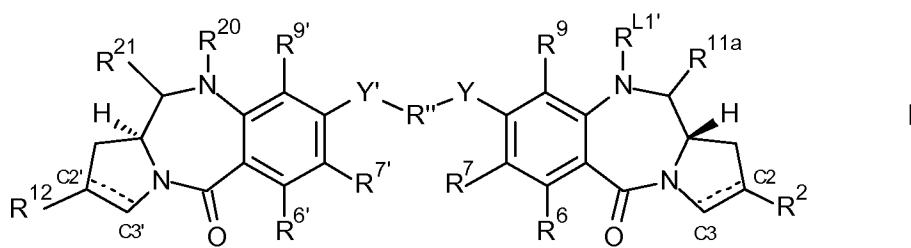
may result in unacceptable levels of toxicity to normal cells (Xie *et al* (2006) *Expert Opin. Biol. Ther.* 6(3):281-291; Kovtun *et al* (2006) *Cancer Res.* 66(6):3214-3121; Law *et al* (2006) *Cancer Res.* 66(4):2328-2337; Wu *et al* (2005) *Nature Biotech.* 23(9):1137-1145; Lambert J. (2005) *Current Opin. in Pharmacol.* 5:543-549; Hamann P. (2005) *Expert Opin. Ther. Patents* 15(9):1087-1103; Payne, G. (2003) *Cancer Cell* 3:207-212; Trail *et al* (2003) *Cancer Immunol. Immunother.* 52:328-337; Syrigos and Epenetos (1999) *Anticancer Research* 19:605-614).

Maximal efficacy with minimal toxicity is sought thereby. Efforts to design and refine ADC  
10 have focused on the selectivity of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) as well as drug mechanism  
of action, drug-linking, drug/antibody ratio (loading), and drug-releasing properties (Junutula,  
*et al.*, 2008b *Nature Biotech.*, 26(8):925-932; Dornan *et al* (2009) *Blood* 114(13):2721-2729;  
US 7521541; US 7723485; WO2009/052249; McDonagh (2006) *Protein Eng. Design & Sel.*  
19(7): 299-307; Doronina *et al* (2006) *Bioconj. Chem.* 17:114-124; Erickson *et al* (2006)  
15 *Cancer Res.* 66(8):1-8; Sanderson *et al* (2005) *Clin. Cancer Res.* 11:843-852; Jeffrey *et al*  
(2005) *J. Med. Chem.* 48:1344-1358; Hamblett *et al* (2004) *Clin. Cancer Res.* 10:7063-  
7070). Drug moieties may impart their cytotoxic and cytostatic effects by mechanisms  
including tubulin binding, DNA binding, proteasome and/or topoisomerase inhibition. Some  
cytotoxic drugs tend to be inactive or less active when conjugated to large antibodies or  
20 protein receptor ligands.

The present inventors have developed particular PBD dimer antibody conjugates.

### Disclosure of the Invention

A first aspect of the present invention comprises a conjugate of formula L -  $(D^L)_p$ , where  $D^L$  is of formula I or II:



wherein:

L is an antibody (Ab) as defined below;

when there is a double bond present between C2' and C3', R<sup>12</sup> is selected from the group consisting of:

10

(ia) C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group comprising: halo, nitro, cyano, ether, carboxy, ester, C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> heterocyclyl and bis-oxy-C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylene;

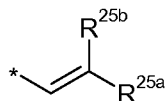
(ib) C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl;

15

(ic) C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl;

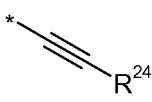


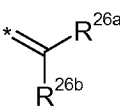
(id) , wherein each of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 5;



(ie) , wherein one of R<sup>25a</sup> and R<sup>25b</sup> is H and the other is selected from: phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; and

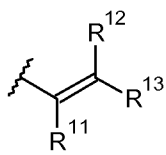
20

(if) , where R<sup>24</sup> is selected from: H; C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; when there is a single bond present between C2' and C3',

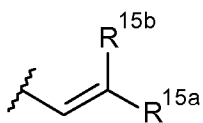
5 , where R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> are independently selected from H, F, C<sub>1-4</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted by a group selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl amido and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester; or, when one of R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> is H, the other is selected from nitrile and a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester; R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo; 10 where R and R' are independently selected from optionally substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl groups; R<sup>7</sup> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NHRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo; R'' is a C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene group, which chain may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, 15 e.g. O, S, NR<sup>N2</sup> (where R<sup>N2</sup> is H or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl), and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine; Y and Y' are selected from O, S, or NH; R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>9</sup> are selected from the same groups as R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> respectively;

**[Formula I]**

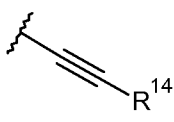
20 R<sup>L1'</sup> is a linker for connection to the antibody (Ab); R<sup>11a</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup>, where R<sup>A</sup> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, and SO<sub>z</sub>M, where z is 2 or 3 and M is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation; R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or; 25 R<sup>20</sup> is selected from H and R<sup>C</sup>, where R<sup>C</sup> is a capping group; R<sup>21</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>2</sub>M; when there is a double bond present between C2 and C3, R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of: 30 (ia) C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group comprising: halo, nitro, cyano, ether, carboxy, ester, C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> heterocyclyl and bis-oxy-C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylene; (ib) C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl; (ic) C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl;



(id) , wherein each of  $R^{11}$ ,  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  are independently selected from H,  $C_{1-3}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon atoms in the  $R^2$  group is no more than 5;

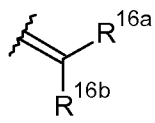


(ie) , wherein one of  $R^{15a}$  and  $R^{15b}$  is H and the other is selected from: phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; and



(if) , where  $R^{14}$  is selected from: H;  $C_{1-3}$  saturated alkyl;  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl;  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl;

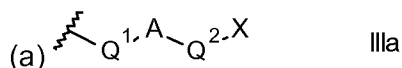
10 when there is a single bond present between C2 and C3,



$R^2$  is , where  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$  are independently selected from H, F,  $C_{1-4}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted by a group selected from  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl amido and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl ester; or, when one of  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$  is H, the other is selected from nitrile and a  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl ester;

15 **[Formula II]**

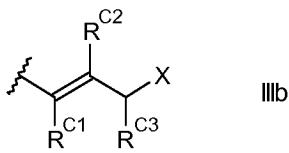
$R^{22}$  is of formula IIIa, formula IIIb or formula IIIc:



where A is a  $C_{5-7}$  aryl group, and either

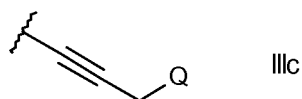
(i)  $Q^1$  is a single bond, and  $Q^2$  is selected from a single bond and  $-Z-(CH_2)_n-$ , where Z is selected from a single bond, O, S and NH and n is from 1 to 3; or

20 (ii)  $Q^1$  is  $-CH=CH-$ , and  $Q^2$  is a single bond;



where;

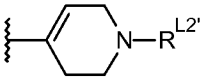
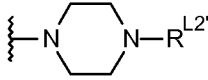
$R^{C1}$ ,  $R^{C2}$  and  $R^{C3}$  are independently selected from H and unsubstituted  $C_{1-2}$  alkyl;



(c)

where Q is selected from O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup> and NR<sup>N</sup>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, and R<sup>N</sup> is selected from H, methyl and ethyl

X is selected from the group comprising: O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO-R<sup>L2'</sup>, NH-C(=O)-R<sup>L2'</sup>,

5 NHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CONHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, , , NR<sup>N</sup>R<sup>L2'</sup>, wherein R<sup>N</sup> is

selected from the group comprising H and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>L2'</sup> is a linker for connection to the antibody (Ab);

R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or;

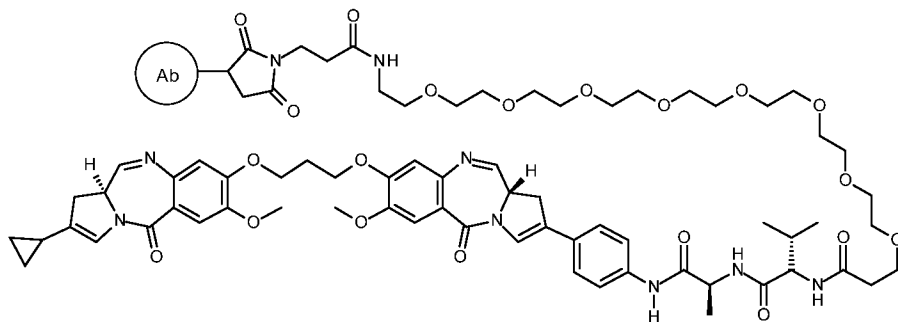
10 R<sup>10</sup> is H and R<sup>11</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>2</sub>M;

R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or;

R<sup>30</sup> is H and R<sup>31</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>2</sub>M.

15 In some embodiments, the conjugate is not:

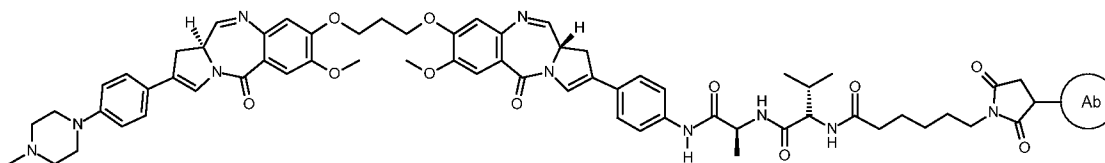
ConjA



ConjA

;

ConjB

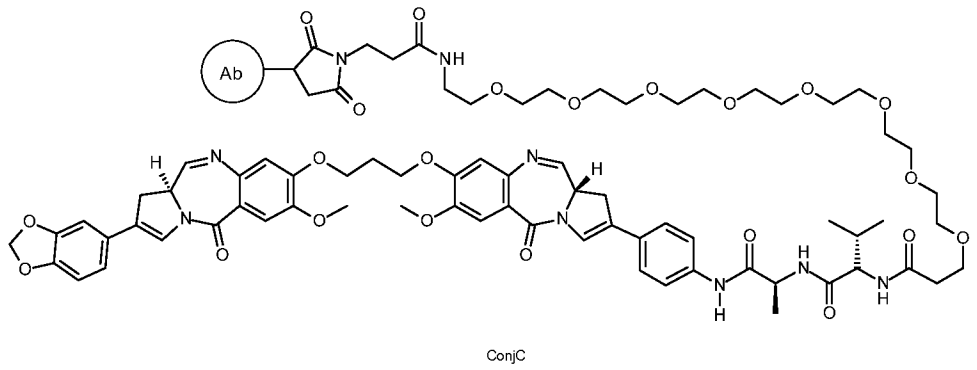


ConjB

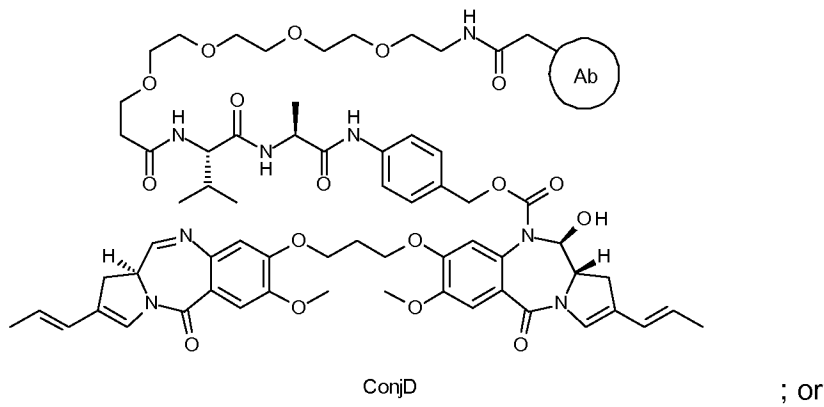
;

20 ConjC:

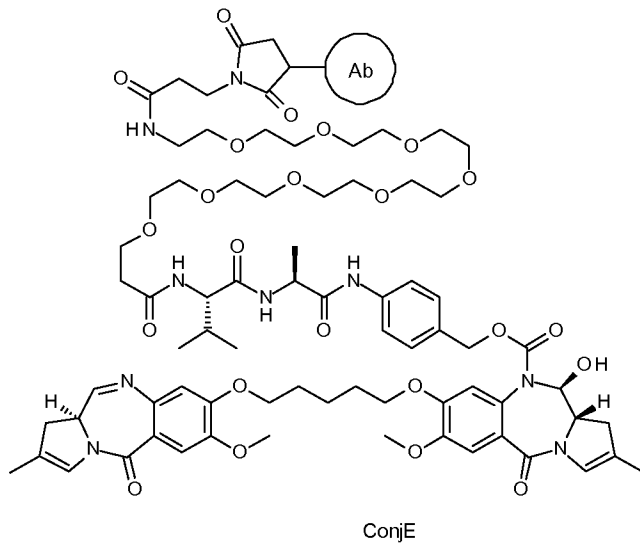




ConjD



ConjE:



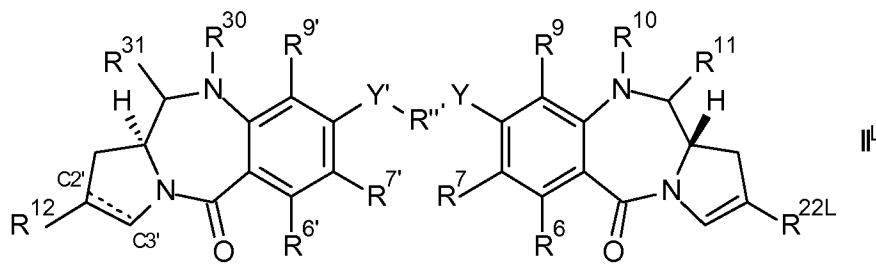
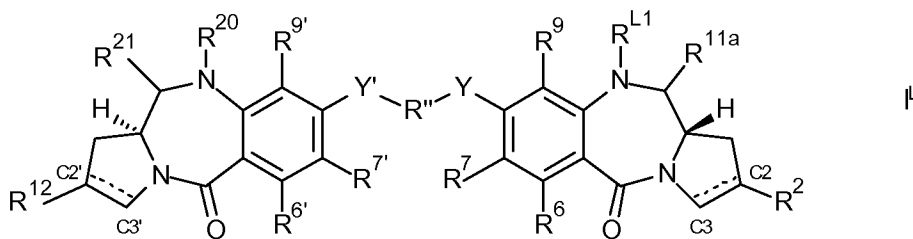
5

In other embodiments, it may be preferred that the conjugate is selected from a conjugate of formula ConjA, ConjB, ConjC, ConjD and ConjE.

10 The subscript p in the formula I is an integer of from 1 to 20. Accordingly, the Conjugates comprise an antibody (Ab) as defined below covalently linked to at least one Drug unit by a

Linker unit. The Ligand unit, described more fully below, is a targeting agent that binds to a target moiety. Accordingly, the present invention also provides methods for the treatment of, for example, various cancers and autoimmune disease. The drug loading is represented by  $p$ , the number of drug molecules per antibody. Drug loading may range from 1 to 20 Drug units ( $D^L$ ) per antibody. For compositions,  $p$  represents the average drug loading of the Conjugates in the composition, and  $p$  ranges from 1 to 20.

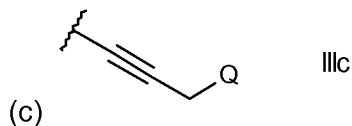
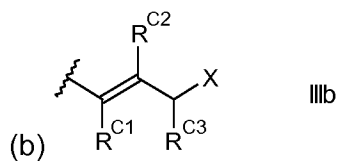
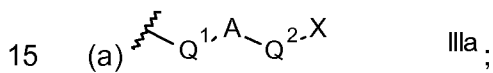
A second aspect of the invention provides a method of making a conjugate according to the first aspect of the invention comprising conjugating a compound of formula I<sup>L</sup> or II<sup>L</sup>:



to the antibody (Ab) as defined below, wherein:

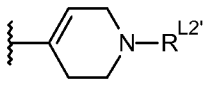
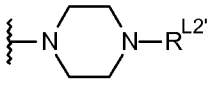
$R^{L1}$  is a linker suitable for conjugation to the antibody (Ab);

$R^{22L}$  is of formula IIIa<sup>L</sup>, formula IIIb<sup>L</sup> or formula IIIc<sup>L</sup>:



where  $Q^L$  is selected from  $O-R^{L2}$ ,  $S-R^{L2}$  and  $NR^N-R^{L2}$ , and  $R^N$  is selected from H, methyl and ethyl

X<sup>L</sup> is selected from the group comprising: O-R<sup>L2</sup>, S-R<sup>L2</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2</sup>, CO-R<sup>L2</sup>, N=C=O-R<sup>L2</sup>,

NHNH-R<sup>L2</sup>, CONHNH-R<sup>L2</sup>, , , NR<sup>N</sup>R<sup>L</sup>, wherein R<sup>N</sup> is

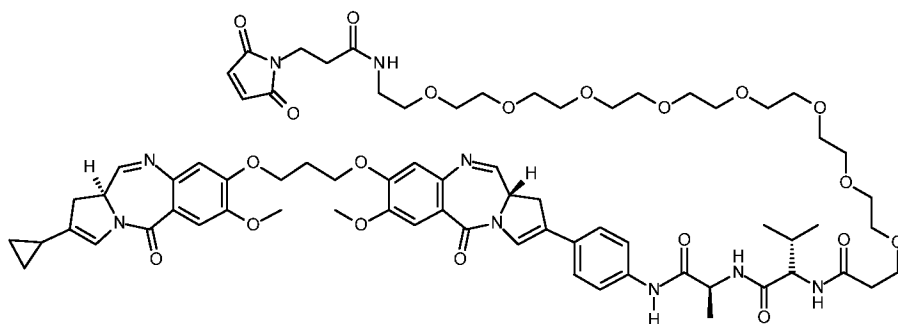
selected from the group comprising H and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>L2</sup> is a linker suitable for conjugation to the antibody (Ab);

5 and all the remaining groups are as defined in the first aspect.

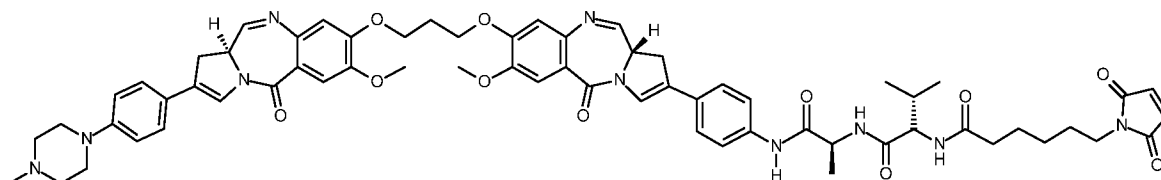
Thus it may be preferred in the second aspect, that the invention provides a method of making a conjugate selected from the group consisting of ConjA, ConjB, ConjC, ConjD and ConjE comprising conjugating a compound which is selected respectively from A:

10



A

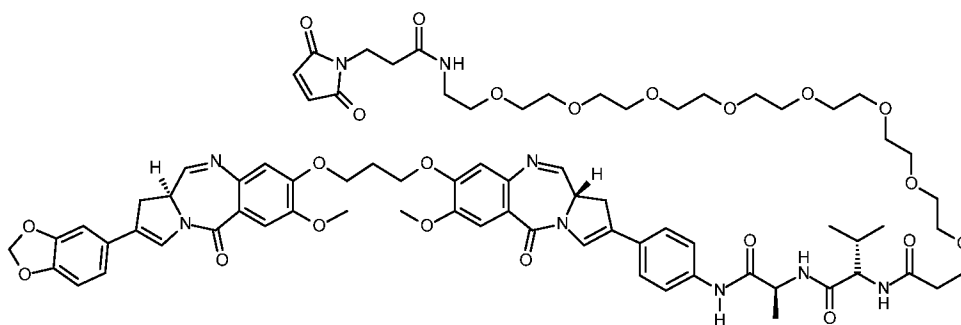
B:



B

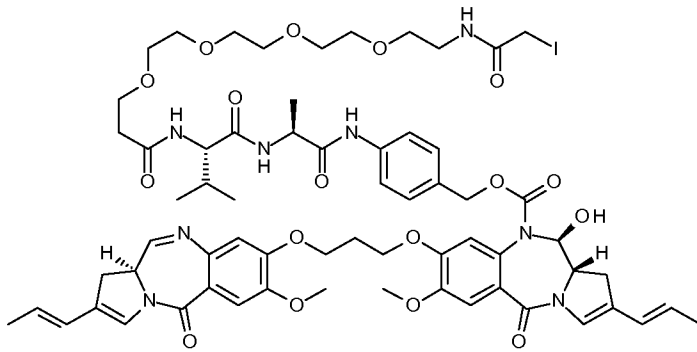
15

C:



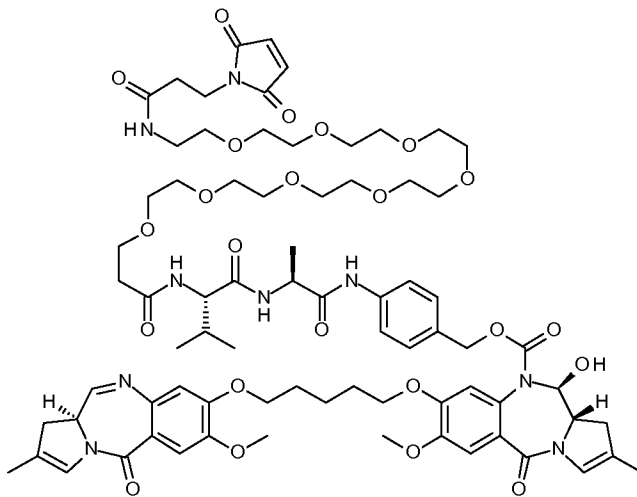
C

D:



D

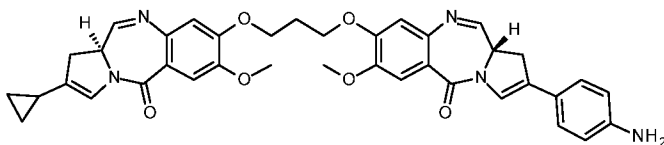
and E:



E

5 with an antibody as defined below.

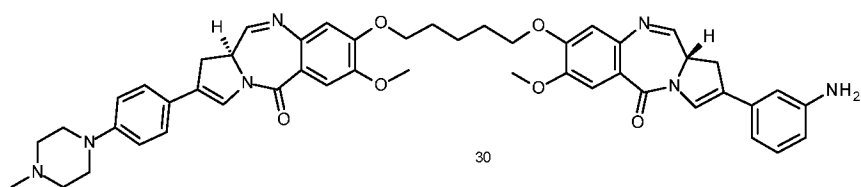
WO 2011/130615 discloses compound 26:



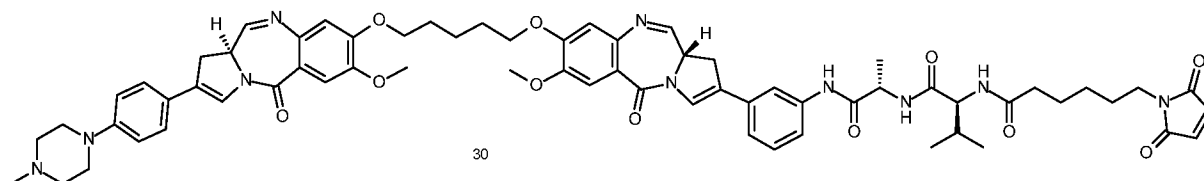
26

10 which is the parent compound of A. Compound A comprises this PBD with a linker for attachment to a cell binding agent. The cell binding agent provides a number of ethylene glycol moieties to provide solubility which is useful in the synthesis of conjugates.

WO 2010/043380 and WO 2011/130613 disclose compound 30:



WO 2011/130613 also discloses compound 51:

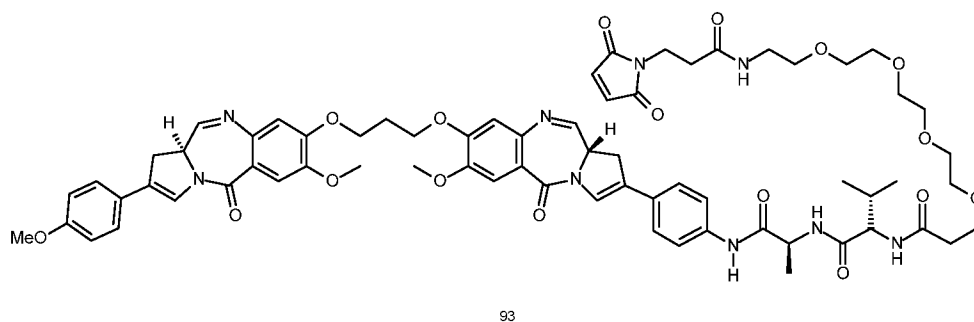


5

Compound B differs from compound 30 by only having a  $(\text{CH}_2)_3$  tether between the PBD moieties, instead of a  $(\text{CH}_2)_5$  tether, which reduces the lipophilicity of the released PBD dimer. The linking group is attached to the C2-phenyl group in the para rather than meta position.

10

WO 2011/130613 discloses compound 93:



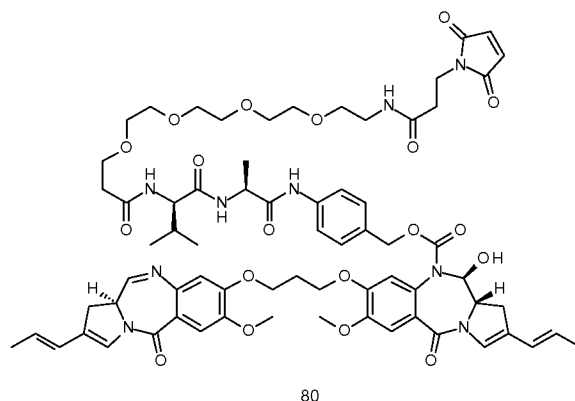
Compound C differs from this in two respects. The cell binding agent provides an increased number of ethylene glycol moieties to provide solubility which is useful in the synthesis of conjugates, and the phenyl substituent provide two rather than one oxygen atom, which also aids solubility. Compound C's structure may also mean it binds more strongly in the minor groove.

15

Compounds A, B and C have two  $\text{sp}^2$  centres in each C-ring, which may allow for stronger binding in the minor groove of DNA, than for compounds with only one  $\text{sp}^2$  centre in each C-ring.

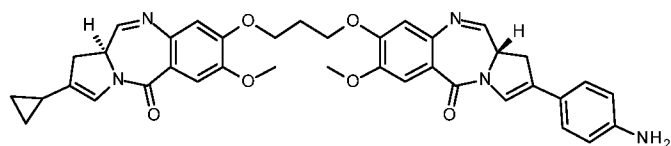
20

WO 2011/130598 discloses compound 80:



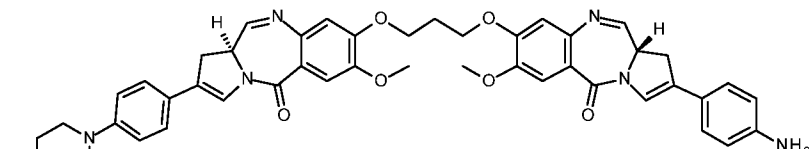
- Compound D differs from this by comprising an iodoacetamide group for linking to the cell binding agent. This group may offer advantages over compound 80 with regards to its stability when bound to a cell binding agent (see below). The maleimide group in compound 80 can undergo a retro-Michael reaction, becoming unconjugated from the cell binding agent, and thus vulnerable to scavenging by other thiol containing biological molecules, such as albumin and glutathione. Such unconjugation cannot occur with compound A. Also, the iodoacetamide group may avoid other unwanted side reactions.
- Compound E differs from previously disclosed PBD dimers with a drug linker having a C2-3 endo-double bond, by having a smaller, less lipophilic C2 substituent, e.g. 4F-phenyl, propylene. As such, the conjugates of compound B (see below) are less likely to aggregate once synthesised. Such aggregation of conjugates can be measured by Size exclusion chromatography (SEC).
- Both compound D and E have two  $sp^2$  centres in each C-ring, which may allow for stronger binding in the minor groove of DNA, than for compounds with only one  $sp^2$  centre in each C-ring.
- The drug linkers disclosed in WO 2010/043880, WO 2011/130613, WO 2011/130598 and WO 2011/130616 may be used in the present invention, and are incorporated herein by reference. The drug linkers described herein may be synthesised as described in these disclosures.
- Detailed description of the invention**
- The present invention is suitable for use in providing a PBD compound to a preferred site in a subject. The conjugate allows the release of an active PBD compound that does not retain

any part of the linker. There is no stub present that could affect the reactivity of the PBD compound. Thus ConjA would release the compound RelA:



RelA

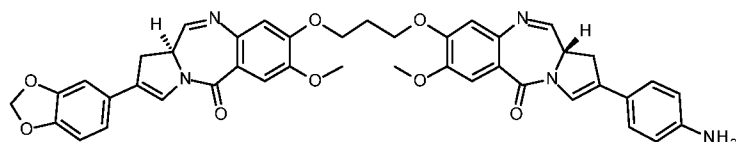
ConjB would release the compound RelB:



RelB

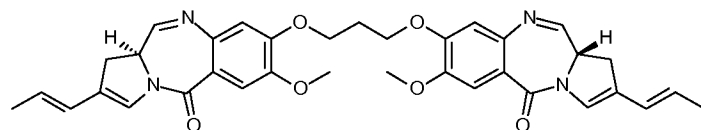
5

ConjC would release the compound RelC:



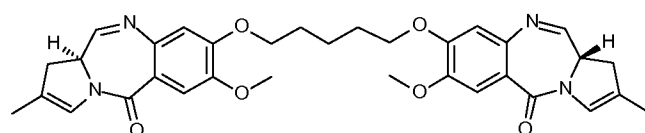
RelC

ConjD would release the compound RelD:



RelD

10 and ConjE would release the compound RelE:



RelE

The specified link between the PBD dimer and the antibody, in the present invention is preferably stable extracellularly. Before transport or delivery into a cell, the antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) is preferably stable and remains intact, i.e. the antibody remains linked to the drug moiety. The linkers are stable outside the target cell and may be cleaved at some efficacious rate inside the cell. An effective linker will: (i) maintain the specific binding properties of the antibody; (ii) allow intracellular delivery of the conjugate or drug moiety; (iii) remain stable and intact, i.e. not cleaved, until the conjugate has been delivered or

20

transported to its targetted site; and (iv) maintain a cytotoxic, cell-killing effect or a cytostatic effect of the PBD drug moiety. Stability of the ADC may be measured by standard analytical techniques such as mass spectroscopy, HPLC, and the separation/analysis technique LC/MS.

5

Delivery of the compounds of formulae RelA, RelB, RelC, RelD or RelE is achieved at the desired activation site of the conjugates of formulae ConjA, ConjB, ConjC, ConjD or ConjE by the action of an enzyme, such as cathepsin, on the linking group, and in particular on the valine-alanine dipeptide moiety.

10

### **Antibody**

In one aspect the antibody is an antibody that binds to CD19, the antibody comprising a VH domain having the sequence according to any one of SEQ ID NOs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6.

15 The antibody may further comprise a VL domain. In some embodiments the antibody further comprises a VL domain having the sequence according to any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

In some embodiments the antibody comprises a VH domain paired with a VL domain, the  
20 VH and VL domains having sequences selected from the group consisting of:  
SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
SEQ ID NO. 3 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
25 SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12; and  
SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12. For example SEQ  
ID NO. 1 paired with SEQ ID NO. 7, SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8, SEQ ID NO. 3  
paired with SEQ ID NO. 9, SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with SEQ ID NO. 10, SEQ ID NO. 5 paired  
with SEQ ID NO. 11 or SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with SEQ ID NO. 12.

30

The VH and VL domain(s) may pair so as to form an antibody antigen binding site that binds CD19.

In some embodiments the antibody is an intact antibody comprising a VH domain paired with  
35 a VL domain, the VH and VL domains having sequences selected from the group consisting  
of:



SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;

SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;

SEQ ID NO. 3 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;

SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;

5 SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12; and

SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12. For example SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with SEQ ID NO. 7, SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8, SEQ ID NO. 3 paired with SEQ ID NO. 9, SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with SEQ ID NO. 10, SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with SEQ ID NO. 11 or SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with SEQ ID NO. 12.

10

In some embodiments, the antibody competes with the antibody secreted by hybridoma ATCC accession No. HB-305 for binding to CD19. In one embodiment the antibody binds CD19 with an association constant ( $K_a$ ) no less than 2, 5 or 10-fold less than the antibody secreted by the hybridoma.

15

In aspect the antibody is an antibody as described herein which has been modified (or further modified) as described below. In some embodiments the antibody is a humanised, deimmunised or resurfaced version of an antibody disclosed herein.

20

### Terminology

The term "antibody" herein is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, dimers, multimers, multispecific antibodies (e.g., bispecific antibodies), intact antibodies and antibody fragments, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity, for example, the ability to bind CD19 (Miller *et al* (2003) *Jour. of Immunology* 170:4854-4861). Antibodies may be murine, human, humanized, chimeric, or derived from other species. An antibody is a protein generated by the immune system that is capable of recognizing and binding to a specific antigen. (Janeway, C., Travers, P., Walport, M., Shlomchik (2001) *Immuno Biology, 5th Ed.*, Garland Publishing, New York). A target antigen generally has numerous binding sites, also called epitopes, recognized by CDRs on multiple antibodies. Each antibody that specifically binds to a different epitope has a different structure. Thus, one antigen may have more than one corresponding antibody. An antibody includes a full-length immunoglobulin molecule or an immunologically active portion of a full-length immunoglobulin molecule, *i.e.*, a molecule that contains an antigen binding site that immunospecifically binds an antigen of a target of interest or part thereof, such targets including but not limited to, cancer cell or cells that produce autoimmune

35

antibodies associated with an autoimmune disease. The immunoglobulin can be of any type (e.g. IgG, IgE, IgM, IgD, and IgA), class (e.g. IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA1 and IgA2) or subclass, or allotype (e.g. human G1m1, G1m2, G1m3, non-G1m1 [that, is any allotype other than G1m1], G1m17, G2m23, G3m21, G3m28, G3m11, G3m5, G3m13, G3m14, G3m10, G3m15, G3m16, G3m6, G3m24, G3m26, G3m27, A2m1, A2m2, Km1, Km2 and Km3) of immunoglobulin molecule. The immunoglobulins can be derived from any species, including human, murine, or rabbit origin.

As used herein, "binds CD19" is used to mean the antibody binds CD19 with a higher affinity than a non-specific partner such as Bovine Serum Albumin (BSA, Genbank accession no. CAA76847, version no. CAA76847.1 GI:3336842, record update date: Jan 7, 2011 02:30 PM). In some embodiments the antibody binds CD19 with an association constant ( $K_a$ ) at least 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000,  $10^4$ ,  $10^5$  or  $10^6$ -fold higher than the antibody's association constant for BSA, when measured at physiological conditions. The antibodies of the invention can bind CD19 with a high affinity. For example, in some embodiments the antibody can bind CD19 with a  $K_D$  equal to or less than about  $10^{-6}$  M, such as  $1 \times 10^{-6}$ ,  $10^{-7}$ ,  $10^{-8}$ ,  $10^{-9}$ ,  $10^{-10}$ ,  $10^{-11}$ ,  $10^{-12}$ ,  $10^{-13}$  or  $10^{-14}$ .

In some embodiments, CD19 polypeptide corresponds to Genbank accession no. NP\_001171569, version no. NP\_001171569.1 GI:296010921, record update date: Sep 10, 2012 12:43 AM. In one embodiment, the nucleic acid encoding CD19 polypeptide corresponds to Genbank accession no. NM\_001178098, version no. NM\_001178098.1 GI:296010920, record update date: Sep 10, 2012 12:43 AM.

"Antibody fragments" comprise a portion of a full length antibody, generally the antigen binding or variable region thereof. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab',  $F(ab')_2$ , and scFv fragments; diabodies; linear antibodies; fragments produced by a Fab expression library, anti-idiotypic (anti-Id) antibodies, CDR (complementary determining region), and epitope-binding fragments of any of the above which immunospecifically bind to cancer cell antigens, viral antigens or microbial antigens, single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e. the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against

a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to polyclonal antibody preparations which include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. In addition to their specificity, the monoclonal antibodies are advantageous in that they may be  
5 synthesized uncontaminated by other antibodies. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler *et al*  
10 (1975) *Nature* 256:495, or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, US 4816567). The monoclonal antibodies may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson *et al* (1991) *Nature*, 352:624-628; Marks *et al* (1991) *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 or from transgenic mice carrying a fully human immunoglobulin system (Lonberg (2008) *Curr. Opin.* 20(4):450-459).

15

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or  
20 homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (US 4816567; and Morrison *et al* (1984) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851-6855). Chimeric antibodies include "primatized" antibodies comprising variable domain antigen-binding sequences derived from a non-  
25 human primate (e.g. Old World Monkey or Ape) and human constant region sequences.

An "intact antibody" herein is one comprising VL and VH domains, as well as a light chain constant domain (CL) and heavy chain constant domains, CH1, CH2 and CH3. The constant domains may be native sequence constant domains (e.g. human native sequence  
30 constant domains) or amino acid sequence variant thereof. The intact antibody may have one or more "effector functions" which refer to those biological activities attributable to the Fc region (a native sequence Fc region or amino acid sequence variant Fc region) of an antibody. Examples of antibody effector functions include C1q binding; complement dependent cytotoxicity; Fc receptor binding; antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity  
35 (ADCC); phagocytosis; and down regulation of cell surface receptors such as B cell receptor and BCR.

Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, intact antibodies can be assigned to different "classes." There are five major classes of intact antibodies: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into "subclasses" (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of antibodies are called  $\alpha$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $\epsilon$ ,  $\gamma$ , and  $\mu$ , respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

## 10 **Modification of antibodies**

The antibodies disclosed herein may be modified. For example, to make them less immunogenic to a human subject. This may be achieved using any of a number of techniques familiar to the person skilled in the art. Some of these techniques are described in more detail below.

15

### *Humanisation*

Techniques to reduce the *in vivo* immunogenicity of a non-human antibody or antibody fragment include those termed "humanisation".

20 A "humanized antibody" refers to a polypeptide comprising at least a portion of a modified variable region of a human antibody wherein a portion of the variable region, preferably a portion substantially less than the intact human variable domain, has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species and wherein the modified variable region is linked to at least another part of another protein, preferably the constant region of a human antibody. The expression "humanized antibodies" includes human antibodies in which one or more complementarity determining region ("CDR") amino acid residues and/or one or more framework region ("FW" or "FR") amino acid residues are substituted by amino acid residues from analogous sites in rodent or other non-human antibodies. The expression "humanized antibody" also includes an immunoglobulin amino acid sequence variant or  
25 fragment thereof that comprises an FR having substantially the amino acid sequence of a human immunoglobulin and a CDR having substantially the amino acid sequence of a non-human immunoglobulin.

30 "Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. Or, looked at another way, a humanized antibody is a human antibody that also contains selected sequences from

non-human (e.g. murine) antibodies in place of the human sequences. A humanized antibody can include conservative amino acid substitutions or non-natural residues from the same or different species that do not significantly alter its binding and/or biologic activity. Such antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-  
5 human immunoglobulins.

There are a range of humanisation techniques, including 'CDR grafting', 'guided selection', 'deimmunization', 'resurfacing' (also known as 'veneering'), 'composite antibodies', 'Human String Content Optimisation' and framework shuffling.

10

#### CDR grafting

In this technique, the humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementary-determining region (CDR) of the recipient antibody are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as  
15 mouse, rat, camel, bovine, goat, or rabbit having the desired properties (in effect, the non-human CDRs are 'grafted' onto the human framework). In some instances, framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues (this may happen when, for example, a particular FR residue has significant effect on antigen binding).

20

Furthermore, humanized antibodies can comprise residues that are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences. These modifications are made to further refine and maximize antibody performance. Thus, in general, a humanized antibody will comprise all of at least one, and in one aspect two, variable  
25 domains, in which all or all of the hypervariable loops correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FR regions are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optionally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), or that of a human immunoglobulin.

#### Guided selection

The method consists of combining the  $V_H$  or  $V_L$  domain of a given non-human antibody specific for a particular epitope with a human  $V_H$  or  $V_L$  library and specific human V domains are selected against the antigen of interest. This selected human  $V_H$  is then combined with a  $V_L$  library to generate a completely human  $V_HxV_L$  combination. The method is described in  
35 Nature Biotechnology (N.Y.) 12, (1994) 899-903.

### Composite antibodies

In this method, two or more segments of amino acid sequence from a human antibody are combined within the final antibody molecule. They are constructed by combining multiple human VH and VL sequence segments in combinations which limit or avoid human T cell epitopes in the final composite antibody V regions. Where required, T cell epitopes are limited or avoided by, exchanging V region segments contributing to or encoding a T cell epitope with alternative segments which avoid T cell epitopes. This method is described in US 2008/0206239 A1.

### 10 Deimmunization

This method involves the removal of human (or other second species) T-cell epitopes from the V regions of the therapeutic antibody (or other molecule). The therapeutic antibodies V-region sequence is analysed for the presence of MHC class II- binding motifs by, for example, comparison with databases of MHC-binding motifs (such as the "motifs" database hosted at [www.wehi.edu.au](http://www.wehi.edu.au)). Alternatively, MHC class II- binding motifs may be identified using computational threading methods such as those devised by Altuvia et al. (J. Mol. Biol. 249 244-250 (1995)); in these methods, consecutive overlapping peptides from the V-region sequences are testing for their binding energies to MHC class II proteins. This data can then be combined with information on other sequence features which relate to successfully presented peptides, such as amphipathicity, Rothbard motifs, and cleavage sites for cathepsin B and other processing enzymes.

Once potential second species (e.g. human) T-cell epitopes have been identified, they are eliminated by the alteration of one or more amino acids. The modified amino acids are usually within the T-cell epitope itself, but may also be adjacent to the epitope in terms of the primary or secondary structure of the protein (and therefore, may not be adjacent in the primary structure). Most typically, the alteration is by way of substitution but, in some circumstances amino acid addition or deletion will be more appropriate.

All alterations can be accomplished by recombinant DNA technology, so that the final molecule may be prepared by expression from a recombinant host using well established methods such as Site Directed Mutagenesis. However, the use of protein chemistry or any other means of molecular alteration is also possible.

### 35 Resurfacing

This method involves:

(a) determining the conformational structure of the variable region of the non-human (e.g. rodent) antibody (or fragment thereof) by constructing a three-dimensional model of the non-human antibody variable region;

5 (b) generating sequence alignments using relative accessibility distributions from x-ray crystallographic structures of a sufficient number of non-human and human antibody variable region heavy and light chains to give a set of heavy and light chain framework positions wherein the alignment positions are identical in 98% of the sufficient number of non-human antibody heavy and light chains;

10 (c) defining for the non-human antibody to be humanized, a set of heavy and light chain surface exposed amino acid residues using the set of framework positions generated in step (b);

15 (d) identifying from human antibody amino acid sequences a set of heavy and light chain surface exposed amino acid residues that is most closely identical to the set of surface exposed amino acid residues defined in step (c), wherein the heavy and light chain from the human antibody are or are not naturally paired;

(e) substituting, in the amino acid sequence of the non-human antibody to be humanized, the set of heavy and light chain surface exposed amino acid residues defined in step (c) with the set of heavy and light chain surface exposed amino acid residues identified in step (d);

20 (f) constructing a three-dimensional model of the variable region of the non-human antibody resulting from the substituting specified in step (e);

25 (g) identifying, by comparing the three-dimensional models constructed in steps (a) and (f), any amino acid residues from the sets identified in steps (c) or (d), that are within 5 Angstroms of any atom of any residue of the complementarity determining regions of the non-human antibody to be humanized; and

(h) changing any residues identified in step (g) from the human to the original non-human amino acid residue to thereby define a non-human antibody humanizing set of surface exposed amino acid residues; with the proviso that step (a) need not be conducted first, but must be conducted prior to step (g).

30

### Superhumanization

The method compares the non-human sequence with the functional human germline gene repertoire. Those human genes encoding canonical structures identical or closely related to the non-human sequences are selected. Those selected human genes with highest  
35 homology within the CDRs are chosen as FR donors. Finally, the non-human CDRs are grafted onto these human FRs. This method is described in patent WO 2005/079479 A2.

### Human String Content Optimization

This method compares the non-human (e.g. mouse) sequence with the repertoire of human germline genes and the differences are scored as Human String Content (HSC) that  
5 quantifies a sequence at the level of potential MHC/T-cell epitopes. The target sequence is then humanized by maximizing its HSC rather than using a global identity measure to generate multiple diverse humanized variants (described in *Molecular Immunology*, 44, (2007) 1986–1998).

### 10 Framework Shuffling

The CDRs of the non-human antibody are fused in-frame to cDNA pools encompassing all known heavy and light chain human germline gene frameworks. Humanised antibodies are then selected by e.g. panning of the phage displayed antibody library. This is described in *Methods* **36**, 43-60 (2005).

15

### Definitions

#### *Pharmaceutically acceptable cations*

Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable monovalent and divalent cations are discussed in Berge, *et al.*, *J. Pharm. Sci.*, **66**, 1-19 (1977), which is incorporated herein by reference.

20

The pharmaceutically acceptable cation may be inorganic or organic.

Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable monovalent inorganic cations include, but are not limited to, alkali metal ions such as  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$ . Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable  
25 divalent inorganic cations include, but are not limited to, alkaline earth cations such as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ . Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable organic cations include, but are not limited to, ammonium ion (i.e.  $\text{NH}_4^+$ ) and substituted ammonium ions (e.g.  $\text{NH}_3\text{R}^+$ ,  $\text{NH}_2\text{R}_2^+$ ,  $\text{NHR}_3^+$ ,  $\text{NR}_4^+$ ). Examples of some suitable substituted ammonium ions are those derived from: ethylamine, diethylamine, dicyclohexylamine, triethylamine, butylamine,  
30 ethylenediamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, piperazine, benzylamine, phenylbenzylamine, choline, meglumine, and tromethamine, as well as amino acids, such as lysine and arginine. An example of a common quaternary ammonium ion is  $\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_4^+$ .

#### *Substituents*

The phrase “optionally substituted” as used herein, pertains to a parent group which may be  
35 unsubstituted or which may be substituted.



Unless otherwise specified, the term “substituted” as used herein, pertains to a parent group which bears one or more substituents. The term “substituent” is used herein in the conventional sense and refers to a chemical moiety which is covalently attached to, or if appropriate, fused to, a parent group. A wide variety of substituents are well known, and methods for their formation and introduction into a variety of parent groups are also well known.

Examples of substituents are described in more detail below.

**C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl:** The term “C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl” as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon compound having from 1 to 12 carbon atoms, which may be aliphatic or alicyclic, and which may be saturated or unsaturated (e.g. partially unsaturated, fully unsaturated). The term “C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl” as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon compound having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms, which may be aliphatic or alicyclic, and which may be saturated or unsaturated (e.g. partially unsaturated, fully unsaturated). Thus, the term “alkyl” includes the sub-classes alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, etc., discussed below.

Examples of saturated alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl (C<sub>1</sub>), ethyl (C<sub>2</sub>), propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>), hexyl (C<sub>6</sub>) and heptyl (C<sub>7</sub>).

Examples of saturated linear alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, methyl (C<sub>1</sub>), ethyl (C<sub>2</sub>), n-propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), n-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), n-pentyl (amyl) (C<sub>5</sub>), n-hexyl (C<sub>6</sub>) and n-heptyl (C<sub>7</sub>).

Examples of saturated branched alkyl groups include iso-propyl (C<sub>3</sub>), iso-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), sec-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), tert-butyl (C<sub>4</sub>), iso-pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>), and neo-pentyl (C<sub>5</sub>).

**C<sub>2-12</sub> Alkenyl:** The term “C<sub>2-12</sub> alkenyl” as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group having one or more carbon-carbon double bonds.

Examples of unsaturated alkenyl groups include, but are not limited to, ethenyl (vinyl, -CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), 1-propenyl (-CH=CH-CH<sub>3</sub>), 2-propenyl (allyl, -CH-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>), isopropenyl (1-methylvinyl, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH<sub>2</sub>), butenyl (C<sub>4</sub>), pentenyl (C<sub>5</sub>), and hexenyl (C<sub>6</sub>).

C<sub>2-12</sub> alkynyl: The term "C<sub>2-12</sub> alkynyl" as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group having one or more carbon-carbon triple bonds.

5 Examples of unsaturated alkynyl groups include, but are not limited to, ethynyl (-C≡CH) and 2-propynyl (propargyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-C≡CH).

C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkyl: The term "C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkyl" as used herein, pertains to an alkyl group which is also a cyclyl group; that is, a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an alicyclic ring atom of a cyclic hydrocarbon (carbocyclic) compound, which moiety  
10 has from 3 to 7 carbon atoms, including from 3 to 7 ring atoms.

Examples of cycloalkyl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

saturated monocyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

15 cyclopropane (C<sub>3</sub>), cyclobutane (C<sub>4</sub>), cyclopentane (C<sub>5</sub>), cyclohexane (C<sub>6</sub>), cycloheptane (C<sub>7</sub>), methylcyclopropane (C<sub>4</sub>), dimethylcyclopropane (C<sub>5</sub>), methylcyclobutane (C<sub>5</sub>), dimethylcyclobutane (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopentane (C<sub>6</sub>), dimethylcyclopentane (C<sub>7</sub>) and methylcyclohexane (C<sub>7</sub>);

unsaturated monocyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

20 cyclopropene (C<sub>3</sub>), cyclobutene (C<sub>4</sub>), cyclopentene (C<sub>5</sub>), cyclohexene (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopropene (C<sub>4</sub>), dimethylcyclopropene (C<sub>5</sub>), methylcyclobutene (C<sub>5</sub>), dimethylcyclobutene (C<sub>6</sub>), methylcyclopentene (C<sub>6</sub>), dimethylcyclopentene (C<sub>7</sub>) and methylcyclohexene (C<sub>7</sub>); and

saturated polycyclic hydrocarbon compounds:

25 norcarane (C<sub>7</sub>), norpinane (C<sub>7</sub>), norbornane (C<sub>7</sub>).

C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl: The term "C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl" as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from a ring atom of a heterocyclic compound, which moiety has from 3 to 20 ring atoms, of which from 1 to 10 are ring heteroatoms. Preferably, each ring has from 3 to 7 ring atoms, of which from 1 to 4 are ring heteroatoms.

30

In this context, the prefixes (e.g. C<sub>3-20</sub>, C<sub>3-7</sub>, C<sub>5-6</sub>, etc.) denote the number of ring atoms, or range of number of ring atoms, whether carbon atoms or heteroatoms. For example, the term "C<sub>5-6</sub>heterocyclyl", as used herein, pertains to a heterocyclyl group having 5 or 6 ring atoms.

35

Examples of monocyclic heterocyclyl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

- N<sub>1</sub>: aziridine (C<sub>3</sub>), azetidine (C<sub>4</sub>), pyrrolidine (tetrahydropyrrole) (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrroline (e.g., 3-pyrroline, 2,5-dihydropyrrole) (C<sub>5</sub>), 2H-pyrrole or 3H-pyrrole (isopyrrole, isoazole) (C<sub>5</sub>),  
 5 piperidine (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydropyridine (C<sub>6</sub>), tetrahydropyridine (C<sub>6</sub>), azepine (C<sub>7</sub>);  
 O<sub>1</sub>: oxirane (C<sub>3</sub>), oxetane (C<sub>4</sub>), oxolane (tetrahydrofuran) (C<sub>5</sub>), oxole (dihydrofuran) (C<sub>5</sub>),  
 oxane (tetrahydropyran) (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydropyran (C<sub>6</sub>), pyran (C<sub>6</sub>), oxepin (C<sub>7</sub>);  
 S<sub>1</sub>: thiirane (C<sub>3</sub>), thietane (C<sub>4</sub>), thiolane (tetrahydrothiophene) (C<sub>5</sub>), thiane  
 (tetrahydrothiopyran) (C<sub>6</sub>), thiepane (C<sub>7</sub>);  
 10 O<sub>2</sub>: dioxolane (C<sub>5</sub>), dioxane (C<sub>6</sub>), and dioxepane (C<sub>7</sub>);  
 O<sub>3</sub>: trioxane (C<sub>6</sub>);  
 N<sub>2</sub>: imidazolidine (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrazolidine (diazolidine) (C<sub>5</sub>), imidazoline (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrazoline  
 (dihydropyrazole) (C<sub>5</sub>), piperazine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
 N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: tetrahydrooxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), dihydrooxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), tetrahydroisoxazole (C<sub>5</sub>),  
 15 dihydroisoxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), morpholine (C<sub>6</sub>), tetrahydrooxazine (C<sub>6</sub>), dihydrooxazine (C<sub>6</sub>), oxazine  
 (C<sub>6</sub>);  
 N<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: thiazoline (C<sub>5</sub>), thiazolidine (C<sub>5</sub>), thiomorpholine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
 N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: oxadiazine (C<sub>6</sub>);  
 O<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: oxathiole (C<sub>5</sub>) and oxathiane (thioxane) (C<sub>6</sub>); and,  
 20 N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: oxathiazine (C<sub>6</sub>).

Examples of substituted monocyclic heterocyclyl groups include those derived from saccharides, in cyclic form, for example, furanoses (C<sub>5</sub>), such as arabinofuranose, lyxofuranose, ribofuranose, and xylofuranose, and pyranoses (C<sub>6</sub>), such as allopyranose,  
 25 altropyranose, glucopyranose, mannopyranose, gulopyranose, idopyranose, galactopyranose, and talopyranose.

C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl: The term "C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl", as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an aromatic ring atom of an aromatic compound, which  
 30 moiety has from 3 to 20 ring atoms. The term "C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl", as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an aromatic ring atom of an aromatic compound, which moiety has from 5 to 7 ring atoms and the term "C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl", as used herein, pertains to a monovalent moiety obtained by removing a hydrogen atom from an aromatic ring atom of an aromatic compound, which moiety has from 5 to 10 ring atoms.  
 35 Preferably, each ring has from 5 to 7 ring atoms.

In this context, the prefixes (e.g. C<sub>3-20</sub>, C<sub>5-7</sub>, C<sub>5-6</sub>, C<sub>5-10</sub>, etc.) denote the number of ring atoms, or range of number of ring atoms, whether carbon atoms or heteroatoms. For example, the term “C<sub>5-6</sub> aryl” as used herein, pertains to an aryl group having 5 or 6 ring atoms.

5 The ring atoms may be all carbon atoms, as in “carboaryl groups”.

Examples of carboaryl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from benzene (i.e. phenyl) (C<sub>6</sub>), naphthalene (C<sub>10</sub>), azulene (C<sub>10</sub>), anthracene (C<sub>14</sub>), phenanthrene (C<sub>14</sub>), naphthacene (C<sub>18</sub>), and pyrene (C<sub>16</sub>).

10 Examples of aryl groups which comprise fused rings, at least one of which is an aromatic ring, include, but are not limited to, groups derived from indane (e.g. 2,3-dihydro-1H-indene) (C<sub>9</sub>), indene (C<sub>9</sub>), isoindene (C<sub>9</sub>), tetraline (1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene (C<sub>10</sub>), acenaphthene (C<sub>12</sub>), fluorene (C<sub>13</sub>), phenalene (C<sub>13</sub>), acephenanthrene (C<sub>15</sub>), and aceanthrene (C<sub>16</sub>).

15

Alternatively, the ring atoms may include one or more heteroatoms, as in “heteroaryl groups”. Examples of monocyclic heteroaryl groups include, but are not limited to, those derived from:

N<sub>1</sub>: pyrrole (azole) (C<sub>5</sub>), pyridine (azine) (C<sub>6</sub>);

20 O<sub>1</sub>: furan (oxole) (C<sub>5</sub>);

S<sub>1</sub>: thiophene (thiole) (C<sub>5</sub>);

N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: oxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), isoxazole (C<sub>5</sub>), isoxazine (C<sub>6</sub>);

N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: oxadiazole (furazan) (C<sub>5</sub>);

N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>1</sub>: oxatriazole (C<sub>5</sub>);

25 N<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>: thiazole (C<sub>5</sub>), isothiazole (C<sub>5</sub>);

N<sub>2</sub>: imidazole (1,3-diazole) (C<sub>5</sub>), pyrazole (1,2-diazole) (C<sub>5</sub>), pyridazine (1,2-diazine) (C<sub>6</sub>), pyrimidine (1,3-diazine) (C<sub>6</sub>) (e.g., cytosine, thymine, uracil), pyrazine (1,4-diazine) (C<sub>6</sub>);

N<sub>3</sub>: triazole (C<sub>5</sub>), triazine (C<sub>6</sub>); and,

N<sub>4</sub>: tetrazole (C<sub>5</sub>).

30

Examples of heteroaryl which comprise fused rings, include, but are not limited to:

C<sub>9</sub> (with 2 fused rings) derived from benzofuran (O<sub>1</sub>), isobenzofuran (O<sub>1</sub>), indole (N<sub>1</sub>), isoindole (N<sub>1</sub>), indolizine (N<sub>1</sub>), indoline (N<sub>1</sub>), isoindoline (N<sub>1</sub>), purine (N<sub>4</sub>) (e.g., adenine, guanine), benzimidazole (N<sub>2</sub>), indazole (N<sub>2</sub>), benzoxazole (N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>), benzisoxazole (N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>),

35 benzodioxole (O<sub>2</sub>), benzofurazan (N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>), benzotriazole (N<sub>3</sub>), benzothiofuran (S<sub>1</sub>),

benzothiazole (N<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>), benzothiadiazole (N<sub>2</sub>S);

C<sub>10</sub> (with 2 fused rings) derived from chromene (O<sub>1</sub>), isochromene (O<sub>1</sub>), chroman (O<sub>1</sub>), isochroman (O<sub>1</sub>), benzodioxan (O<sub>2</sub>), quinoline (N<sub>1</sub>), isoquinoline (N<sub>1</sub>), quinolizine (N<sub>1</sub>), benzoxazine (N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>), benzodiazine (N<sub>2</sub>), pyridopyridine (N<sub>2</sub>), quinoxaline (N<sub>2</sub>), quinazoline (N<sub>2</sub>), cinnoline (N<sub>2</sub>), phthalazine (N<sub>2</sub>), naphthyridine (N<sub>2</sub>), pteridine (N<sub>4</sub>);

5 C<sub>11</sub> (with 2 fused rings) derived from benzodiazepine (N<sub>2</sub>);

C<sub>13</sub> (with 3 fused rings) derived from carbazole (N<sub>1</sub>), dibenzofuran (O<sub>1</sub>), dibenzothiophene (S<sub>1</sub>), carboline (N<sub>2</sub>), perimidine (N<sub>2</sub>), pyridoindole (N<sub>2</sub>); and,

10 C<sub>14</sub> (with 3 fused rings) derived from acridine (N<sub>1</sub>), xanthene (O<sub>1</sub>), thioxanthene (S<sub>1</sub>), oxanthrene (O<sub>2</sub>), phenoxathiin (O<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>), phenazine (N<sub>2</sub>), phenoxazine (N<sub>1</sub>O<sub>1</sub>), phenothiazine (N<sub>1</sub>S<sub>1</sub>), thianthrene (S<sub>2</sub>), phenanthridine (N<sub>1</sub>), phenanthroline (N<sub>2</sub>), phenazine (N<sub>2</sub>).

The above groups, whether alone or part of another substituent, may themselves optionally be substituted with one or more groups selected from themselves and the additional substituents listed below.

15

Halo: -F, -Cl, -Br, and -I.

Hydroxy: -OH.

20

Ether: -OR, wherein R is an ether substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to as a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkoxy group, discussed below), a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group (also referred to as a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyloxy group), or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group (also referred to as a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryloxy group), preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub>alkyl group.

25

Alkoxy: -OR, wherein R is an alkyl group, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of C<sub>1-7</sub> alkoxy groups include, but are not limited to, -OMe (methoxy), -OEt (ethoxy), -O(nPr) (n-propoxy), -O(iPr) (isopropoxy), -O(nBu) (n-butoxy), -O(sBu) (sec-butoxy), -O(iBu) (isobutoxy), and -O(tBu) (tert-butoxy).

30

Acetal: -CH(OR<sup>1</sup>)(OR<sup>2</sup>), wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are independently acetal substituents, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or, in the case of a "cyclic" acetal group, R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup>, taken together with the two oxygen atoms to which they are attached, and the carbon atoms to which they are attached, form a heterocyclic ring having from 4 to 8 ring atoms. Examples of acetal groups include,

35

but are not limited to, -CH(OMe)<sub>2</sub>, -CH(OEt)<sub>2</sub>, and -CH(OMe)(OEt).

Hemiacetal:  $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})(\text{OR}^1)$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is a hemiacetal substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group.

Examples of hemiacetal groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})(\text{OMe})$  and  $-\text{CH}(\text{OH})(\text{OEt})$ .

5

Ketal:  $-\text{CR}(\text{OR}^1)(\text{OR}^2)$ , where  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are as defined for acetals, and R is a ketal substituent other than hydrogen, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples ketal groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{C}(\text{Me})(\text{OMe})_2$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Me})(\text{OEt})_2$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Me})(\text{OMe})(\text{OEt})$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Et})(\text{OMe})_2$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Et})(\text{OEt})_2$ , and  $-\text{C}(\text{Et})(\text{OMe})(\text{OEt})$ .

10

Hemiketal:  $-\text{CR}(\text{OH})(\text{OR}^1)$ , where  $\text{R}^1$  is as defined for hemiacetals, and R is a hemiketal substituent other than hydrogen, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of hemiacetal groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{C}(\text{Me})(\text{OH})(\text{OMe})$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Et})(\text{OH})(\text{OMe})$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{Me})(\text{OH})(\text{OEt})$ , and  $-\text{C}(\text{Et})(\text{OH})(\text{OEt})$ .

15

Oxo (keto, -one):  $=\text{O}$ .

20 Thione (thioketone):  $=\text{S}$ .

Imino (imine):  $=\text{NR}$ , wherein R is an imino substituent, for example, hydrogen,  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to,  $=\text{NH}$ ,  $=\text{NMe}$ ,  $=\text{NEt}$ , and  $=\text{NPh}$ .

25

Formyl (carbaldehyde, carboxaldehyde):  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{H}$ .

Acyl (keto):  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}$ , wherein R is an acyl substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group (also referred to as  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkylacyl or  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkanoyl), a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group (also referred to as  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclylacyl), or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group (also referred to as  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  arylacyl), preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of acyl groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_3$  (acetyl),  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  (propionyl),  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$  (t-butyryl), and  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{Ph}$  (benzoyl, phenone).

30

35 Carboxy (carboxylic acid):  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OH}$ .

Thiocarboxy (thiocarboxylic acid):  $-\text{C}(=\text{S})\text{SH}$ .

Thiolocarboxy (thiolocarboxylic acid):  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{SH}$ .

5 Thionocarboxy (thionocarboxylic acid):  $-\text{C}(=\text{S})\text{OH}$ .

Imidic acid:  $-\text{C}(=\text{NH})\text{OH}$ .

Hydroxamic acid:  $-\text{C}(=\text{NOH})\text{OH}$ .

10

Ester (carboxylate, carboxylic acid ester, oxycarbonyl):  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}$ , wherein R is an ester substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$ ,  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ,  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ , and  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OPh}$ .

15

Acyloxy (reverse ester):  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}$ , wherein R is an acyloxy substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of acyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_3$  (acetoxyl),  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{Ph}$ , and  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{Ph}$ .

20

Oxycarboxyloxy:  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OR}$ , wherein R is an ester substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of ester groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OCH}_3$ ,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ,  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OC}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ , and  $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{OPh}$ .

25

Amino:  $-\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are independently amino substituents, for example, hydrogen, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group (also referred to as  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkylamino or di- $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkylamino), a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably H or a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, or, in the case of a "cyclic" amino group,  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$ , taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are

30

attached, form a heterocyclic ring having from 4 to 8 ring atoms. Amino groups may be primary ( $-\text{NH}_2$ ), secondary ( $-\text{NHR}^1$ ), or tertiary ( $-\text{NHR}^1\text{R}^2$ ), and in cationic form, may be quaternary ( $-\text{N}^+\text{R}^1\text{R}^2\text{R}^3$ ). Examples of amino groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHCH}_3$ ,  $-\text{NHC}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ , and  $-\text{NHPH}$ . Examples of cyclic amino groups include, but are not limited to, aziridino, azetidino, pyrrolidino, piperidino, piperazino,

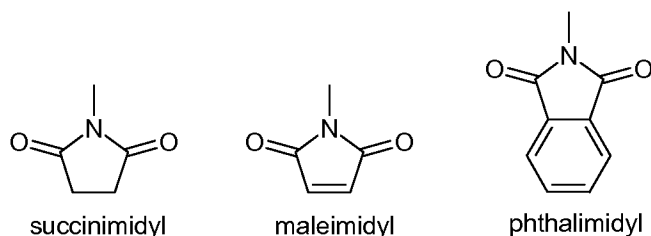
35

morpholino, and thiomorpholino.

Amido (carbamoyl, carbamyl, aminocarbonyl, carboxamide):  $-C(=O)NR^1R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of amido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-C(=O)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=O)NHCH_3$ ,  $-C(=O)N(CH_3)_2$ ,  $-C(=O)NHCH_2CH_3$ , and  $-C(=O)N(CH_2CH_3)_2$ , as well as amido groups in which  $R^1$  and  $R^2$ , together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, form a heterocyclic structure as in, for example, piperidinocarbonyl, morpholinocarbonyl, thiomorpholinocarbonyl, and piperazinocarbonyl.

Thioamido (thiocarbamyl):  $-C(=S)NR^1R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of amido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-C(=S)NH_2$ ,  $-C(=S)NHCH_3$ ,  $-C(=S)N(CH_3)_2$ , and  $-C(=S)NHCH_2CH_3$ .

Acylamido (acylamino):  $-NR^1C(=O)R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  is an amide substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, and  $R^2$  is an acyl substituent, for example, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of acylamide groups include, but are not limited to,  $-NHC(=O)CH_3$ ,  $-NHC(=O)CH_2CH_3$ , and  $-NHC(=O)Ph$ .  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  may together form a cyclic structure, as in, for example, succinimidyl, maleimidyl, and phthalimidyl:



20

Aminocarbonyloxy:  $-OC(=O)NR^1R^2$ , wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of aminocarbonyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-OC(=O)NH_2$ ,  $-OC(=O)NHMe$ ,  $-OC(=O)NMe_2$ , and  $-OC(=O)NEt_2$ .

25

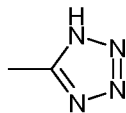
Ureido:  $-N(R^1)CONR^2R^3$  wherein  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups, and  $R^1$  is a ureido substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably hydrogen or a  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of ureido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-NHCONH_2$ ,  $-NHCONHMe$ ,  $-NHCONHEt$ ,  $-NHCONMe_2$ ,  $-NHCONEt_2$ ,  $-NMeCONH_2$ ,  $-NMeCONHMe$ ,  $-NMeCONHEt$ ,  $-NMeCONMe_2$ , and  $-NMeCONEt_2$ .

30



Guanidino:  $\text{-NH-C(=NH)NH}_2$ .

Tetrazolyl: a five membered aromatic ring having four nitrogen atoms and one carbon atom,



5

Imino:  $\text{=NR}$ , wherein R is an imino substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably H or a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of imino groups include, but are not limited to,  $\text{=NH}$ ,  $\text{=NMe}$ , and  $\text{=NEt}$ .

10 Amidine (amidino):  $\text{-C(=NR)NR}_2$ , wherein each R is an amidine substituent, for example, hydrogen, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably H or a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of amidine groups include, but are not limited to,  $\text{-C(=NH)NH}_2$ ,  $\text{-C(=NH)NMe}_2$ , and  $\text{-C(=NMe)NMe}_2$ .

15 Nitro:  $\text{-NO}_2$ .

Nitroso:  $\text{-NO}$ .

Azido:  $\text{-N}_3$ .

20

Cyano (nitrile, carbonitrile):  $\text{-CN}$ .

Isocyano:  $\text{-NC}$ .

25 Cyanato:  $\text{-OCN}$ .

Isocyanato:  $\text{-NCO}$ .

Thiocyano (thiocyanato):  $\text{-SCN}$ .

30

Isothiocyano (isothiocyanato):  $\text{-NCS}$ .

Sulfhydryl (thiol, mercapto):  $\text{-SH}$ .

Thioether (sulfide): -SR, wherein R is a thioether substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to as a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylthio group), a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of C<sub>1-7</sub> alkylthio groups include, but are not limited to, -SCH<sub>3</sub> and -SCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

5

Disulfide: -SS-R, wherein R is a disulfide substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group (also referred to herein as C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl disulfide). Examples of C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl disulfide groups include, but are not limited to, -SSCH<sub>3</sub> and -SSCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

10

Sulfine (sulfinyl, sulfoxide): -S(=O)R, wherein R is a sulfine substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfine groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)CH<sub>3</sub> and -S(=O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

15 Sulfone (sulfonyl): -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R, wherein R is a sulfone substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, including, for example, a fluorinated or perfluorinated C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfone groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (methanesulfonyl, mesyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub> (triflyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (esyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>4</sub>F<sub>9</sub> (nonafllyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub> (tresyl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> (tauryl), -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>Ph (phenylsulfonyl, besyl), 4-methylphenylsulfonyl (tosyl), 4-chlorophenylsulfonyl (closyl), 4-bromophenylsulfonyl (brosyl), 4-nitrophenyl (nosyl), 2-naphthalenesulfonate (napsyl), and 5-dimethylamino-naphthalen-1-ylsulfonate (dansyl).

20

Sulfinic acid (sulfino): -S(=O)OH, -SO<sub>2</sub>H.

25

Sulfonic acid (sulfo): -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH, -SO<sub>3</sub>H.

Sulfinate (sulfinic acid ester): -S(=O)OR; wherein R is a sulfinate substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group.

30 Examples of sulfinate groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)OCH<sub>3</sub> (methoxysulfinyl; methyl sulfinate) and -S(=O)OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (ethoxysulfinyl; ethyl sulfinate).

Sulfonate (sulfonic acid ester): -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR, wherein R is a sulfonate substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl

35 group. Examples of sulfonate groups include, but are not limited to, -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>3</sub> (methoxysulfonyl; methyl sulfonate) and -S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (ethoxysulfonyl; ethyl sulfonate).

Sulfinyloxy:  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{R}$ , wherein R is a sulfinyloxy substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of sulfinyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_3$  and  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ .

5

Sulfonyloxy:  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}$ , wherein R is a sulfonyloxy substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of sulfonyloxy groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{CH}_3$  (mesylate) and  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$  (esylate).

10

Sulfate:  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{OR}$ ; wherein R is a sulfate substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of sulfate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OS}(=\text{O})_2\text{OCH}_3$  and  $-\text{SO}(=\text{O})_2\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ .

15 Sulfamyl (sulfamoyl; sulfinic acid amide; sulfinamide):  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of sulfamyl groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{NH}(\text{CH}_3)$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ , and  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{NHPh}$ .

20 Sulfonamido (sulfinamoyl; sulfonic acid amide; sulfonamide):  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^1\text{R}^2$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are independently amino substituents, as defined for amino groups. Examples of sulfonamido groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_3)$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)$ ,  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)_2$ , and  $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NHPh}$ .

25 Sulfamino:  $-\text{NR}^1\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{OH}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is an amino substituent, as defined for amino groups. Examples of sulfamino groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{NHS}(=\text{O})_2\text{OH}$  and  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{OH}$ .

30 Sulfonamino:  $-\text{NR}^1\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is an amino substituent, as defined for amino groups, and R is a sulfonamino substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group. Examples of sulfonamino groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{NHS}(=\text{O})_2\text{CH}_3$  and  $-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ .

35 Sulfinamino:  $-\text{NR}^1\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is an amino substituent, as defined for amino groups, and R is a sulfinamino substituent, for example, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group,

or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group. Examples of sulfinamino groups include, but are not limited to, -NHS(=O)CH<sub>3</sub> and -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)S(=O)C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.

5 Phosphino (phosphine): -PR<sub>2</sub>, wherein R is a phosphino substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphino groups include, but are not limited to, -PH<sub>2</sub>, -P(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -P(Ph)<sub>2</sub>.

10 Phospho: -P(=O)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphinyl (phosphine oxide): -P(=O)R<sub>2</sub>, wherein R is a phosphinyl substituent, for example, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphinyl groups include, but are not limited to, -P(=O)(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(=O)(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(=O)(t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -P(=O)(Ph)<sub>2</sub>.

15

Phosphonic acid (phosphono): -P(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphonate (phosphono ester): -P(=O)(OR)<sub>2</sub>, where R is a phosphonate substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphonate groups include, but are not limited to, -P(=O)(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(=O)(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -P(=O)(O-t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -P(=O)(OPh)<sub>2</sub>.

20

Phosphoric acid (phosphonoxy): -OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphate (phosphonoxy ester): -OP(=O)(OR)<sub>2</sub>, where R is a phosphate substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphate groups include, but are not limited to, -OP(=O)(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(=O)(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(=O)(O-t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -OP(=O)(OPh)<sub>2</sub>.

25

30 Phosphorous acid: -OP(OH)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphite: -OP(OR)<sub>2</sub>, where R is a phosphite substituent, for example, -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably -H, a C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl group, or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group. Examples of phosphite groups include, but are not limited to, -OP(OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

35 -OP(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, -OP(O-t-Bu)<sub>2</sub>, and -OP(OPh)<sub>2</sub>.

Phosphoramidite:  $-\text{OP}(\text{OR}^1)\text{-NR}^2_2$ , where  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are phosphoramidite substituents, for example, -H, a (optionally substituted)  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably -H, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group. Examples of phosphoramidite groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OP}(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{-N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,

5  $-\text{OP}(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{-N}(\text{i-Pr})_2$ , and  $-\text{OP}(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN})\text{-N}(\text{i-Pr})_2$ .

Phosphoramidate:  $-\text{OP}(=\text{O})(\text{OR}^1)\text{-NR}^2_2$ , where  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  are phosphoramidate substituents, for example, -H, a (optionally substituted)  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, a  $\text{C}_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group, preferably -H, a  $\text{C}_{1-7}$  alkyl group, or a  $\text{C}_{5-20}$  aryl group. Examples of phosphoramidate groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{OP}(=\text{O})(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{-N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,

10  $-\text{OP}(=\text{O})(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{-N}(\text{i-Pr})_2$ , and  $-\text{OP}(=\text{O})(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CN})\text{-N}(\text{i-Pr})_2$ .

### *Alkylene*

$\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene: The term " $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene", as used herein, pertains to a bidentate moiety obtained by removing two hydrogen atoms, either both from the same carbon atom, or one

15 from each of two different carbon atoms, of a hydrocarbon compound having from 3 to 12 carbon atoms (unless otherwise specified), which may be aliphatic or alicyclic, and which may be saturated, partially unsaturated, or fully unsaturated. Thus, the term "alkylene" includes the sub-classes alkenylene, alkynylene, cycloalkylene, etc., discussed below.

20 Examples of linear saturated  $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene groups include, but are not limited to,  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  where  $n$  is an integer from 3 to 12, for example,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$  (propylene),  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$  (butylene),  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$  (pentylene) and  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$  (heptylene).

25 Examples of branched saturated  $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene groups include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)-$ ,  $-\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2-$ , and  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3)\text{CH}_2-$ .

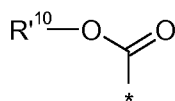
30 Examples of linear partially unsaturated  $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkylene groups ( $\text{C}_{3-12}$  alkenylene, and alkynylene groups) include, but are not limited to,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ ,  $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ , and  $-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-\text{CH}_2-$ .

Examples of branched partially unsaturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> alkenylene and alkynylene groups) include, but are not limited to, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH-, -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-, -CH=CH-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)- and -C≡C-CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)-.

- 5 Examples of alicyclic saturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkylenes) include, but are not limited to, cyclopentylene (e.g. cyclopent-1,3-ylene), and cyclohexylene (e.g. cyclohex-1,4-ylene).

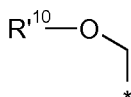
- 10 Examples of alicyclic partially unsaturated C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene groups (C<sub>3-12</sub> cycloalkylenes) include, but are not limited to, cyclopentenylene (e.g. 4-cyclopenten-1,3-ylene), cyclohexenylene (e.g. 2-cyclohexen-1,4-ylene; 3-cyclohexen-1,2-ylene; 2,5-cyclohexadien-1,4-ylene).

- 15 Carbamate nitrogen protecting group: the term “carbamate nitrogen protecting group” pertains to a moiety which masks the nitrogen in the imine bond, and these are well known in the art. These groups have the following structure:



- 20 wherein R<sup>10</sup> is R as defined above. A large number of suitable groups are described on pages 503 to 549 of Greene, T.W. and Wuts, G.M., Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999, which is incorporated herein by reference.

Hemi-aminal nitrogen protecting group: the term “hemi-aminal nitrogen protecting group” pertains to a group having the following structure:



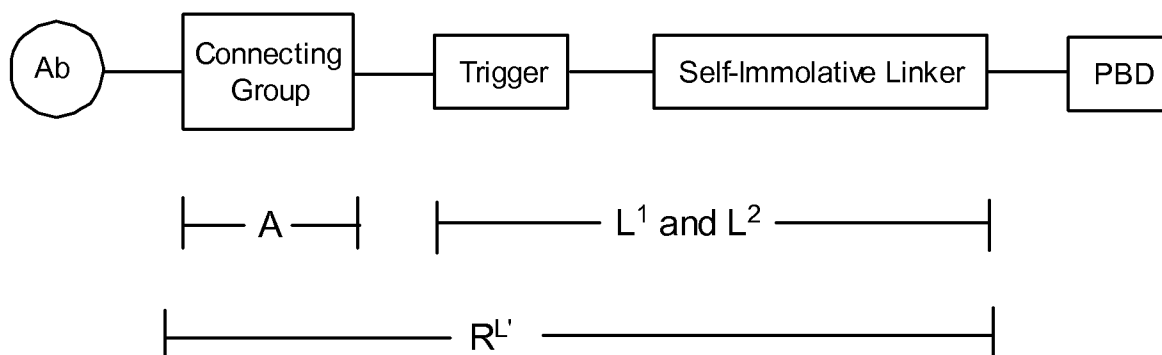
- 25 wherein R<sup>10</sup> is R as defined above. A large number of suitable groups are described on pages 633 to 647 as amide protecting groups of Greene, T.W. and Wuts, G.M., Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3<sup>rd</sup> Edition, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999, which is incorporated herein by reference.

- 30 The groups Carbamate nitrogen protecting group and Hemi-aminal nitrogen protecting group may be jointly termed a “nitrogen protecting group for synthesis”.

## Conjugates

The present invention provides a conjugate comprising a PBD compound connected to the antibody via a Linker Unit.

- 5 In one embodiment, the conjugate comprises the antibody connected to a spacer connecting group, the spacer connected to a trigger, the trigger connected to a self-immolative linker, and the self-immolative linker connected to the N10 position of the PBD compound. Such a conjugate is illustrated below:



- 10 where Ab is the antibody as defined above and PBD is a pyrrolobenzodiazepine compound (D), as described herein. The illustration shows the portions that correspond to  $R^L$ , A,  $L^1$  and  $L^2$  in certain embodiments of the invention.  $R^L$  may be either  $R^{L1}$  or  $R^{L2}$ . D is  $D^L$  with  $R^{L1}$  or  $R^{L2}$  removed.
- 15 The present invention is suitable for use in providing a PBD compound to a preferred site in a subject. In the preferred embodiments, the conjugate allows the release of an active PBD compound that does not retain any part of the linker. There is no stub present that could affect the reactivity of the PBD compound.
- 20 The linker attaches the antibody to the PBD drug moiety D through covalent bond(s). The linker is a bifunctional or multifunctional moiety which can be used to link one or more drug moiety (D) and an antibody unit (Ab) to form antibody-drug conjugates (ADC). The linker ( $R^L$ ) may be stable outside a cell, i.e. extracellular, or it may be cleavable by enzymatic activity, hydrolysis, or other metabolic conditions. Antibody-drug conjugates (ADC) can be
- 25 conveniently prepared using a linker having reactive functionality for binding to the drug moiety and to the antibody. A cysteine thiol, or an amine, e.g. N-terminus or amino acid side chain such as lysine, of the antibody (Ab) can form a bond with a functional group of a linker or spacer reagent, PBD drug moiety (D) or drug-linker reagent ( $D^L$ ,  $D-R^L$ ), where  $R^L$  can be  $R^{L1}$  or  $R^{L2}$ .

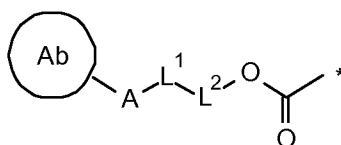
The linkers of the ADC preferably prevent aggregation of ADC molecules and keep the ADC freely soluble in aqueous media and in a monomeric state.

5 The linkers of the ADC are preferably stable extracellularly. Before transport or delivery into a cell, the antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) is preferably stable and remains intact, i.e. the antibody remains linked to the drug moiety. The linkers are stable outside the target cell and may be cleaved at some efficacious rate inside the cell. An effective linker will: (i) maintain the specific binding properties of the antibody; (ii) allow intracellular delivery of the conjugate or drug moiety; (iii) remain stable and intact, i.e. not cleaved, until the conjugate has been  
10 delivered or transported to its targetted site; and (iv) maintain a cytotoxic, cell-killing effect or a cytostatic effect of the PBD drug moiety. Stability of the ADC may be measured by standard analytical techniques such as mass spectroscopy, HPLC, and the separation/analysis technique LC/MS.

15 Covalent attachment of the antibody and the drug moiety requires the linker to have two reactive functional groups, i.e. bivalency in a reactive sense. Bivalent linker reagents which are useful to attach two or more functional or biologically active moieties, such as peptides, nucleic acids, drugs, toxins, antibodies, haptens, and reporter groups are known, and methods have been described their resulting conjugates (Hermanson, G.T. (1996)  
20 Bioconjugate Techniques; Academic Press: New York, p 234-242).

In another embodiment, the linker may be substituted with groups which modulate aggregation, solubility or reactivity. For example, a sulfonate substituent may increase water  
25 solubility of the reagent and facilitate the coupling reaction of the linker reagent with the antibody or the drug moiety, or facilitate the coupling reaction of Ab-L with D<sup>L</sup>, or D<sup>L</sup>-L with Ab, depending on the synthetic route employed to prepare the ADC.

In one embodiment, L-R<sup>L</sup> is a group:



30 where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the Drug Unit (D), Ab is the antibody (L), L<sup>1</sup> is a linker, A is a connecting group connecting L<sup>1</sup> to the antibody, L<sup>2</sup> is a



covalent bond or together with -OC(=O)- forms a self-immolative linker, and L<sup>1</sup> or L<sup>2</sup> is a cleavable linker.

5 L<sup>1</sup> is preferably the cleavable linker, and may be referred to as a trigger for activation of the linker for cleavage.

The nature of L<sup>1</sup> and L<sup>2</sup>, where present, can vary widely. These groups are chosen on the basis of their cleavage characteristics, which may be dictated by the conditions at the site to which the conjugate is delivered. Those linkers that are cleaved by the action of enzymes  
10 are preferred, although linkers that are cleavable by changes in pH (e.g. acid or base labile), temperature or upon irradiation (e.g. photolabile) may also be used. Linkers that are cleavable under reducing or oxidising conditions may also find use in the present invention.

L<sup>1</sup> may comprise a contiguous sequence of amino acids. The amino acid sequence may be  
15 the target substrate for enzymatic cleavage, thereby allowing release of L-R<sup>L</sup> from the N10 position.

In one embodiment, L<sup>1</sup> is cleavable by the action of an enzyme. In one embodiment, the  
20 enzyme is an esterase or a peptidase.

In one embodiment, L<sup>2</sup> is present and together with -C(=O)O- forms a self-immolative linker. In one embodiment, L<sup>2</sup> is a substrate for enzymatic activity, thereby allowing release of L-R<sup>L</sup> from the N10 position.

25 In one embodiment, where L<sup>1</sup> is cleavable by the action of an enzyme and L<sup>2</sup> is present, the enzyme cleaves the bond between L<sup>1</sup> and L<sup>2</sup>.

L<sup>1</sup> and L<sup>2</sup>, where present, may be connected by a bond selected from:

30 -C(=O)NH-,  
-C(=O)O-,  
-NHC(=O)-,  
-OC(=O)-,  
-OC(=O)O-,  
-NHC(=O)O-,  
35 -OC(=O)NH-, and  
-NHC(=O)NH-.

An amino group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to L<sup>2</sup> may be the N-terminus of an amino acid or may be derived from an amino group of an amino acid side chain, for example a lysine amino acid side chain.

5

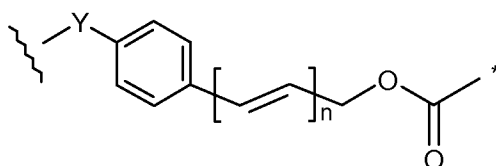
A carboxyl group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to L<sup>2</sup> may be the C-terminus of an amino acid or may be derived from a carboxyl group of an amino acid side chain, for example a glutamic acid amino acid side chain.

10 A hydroxyl group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to L<sup>2</sup> may be derived from a hydroxyl group of an amino acid side chain, for example a serine amino acid side chain.

The term "amino acid side chain" includes those groups found in: (i) naturally occurring amino acids such as alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamine, glutamic acid, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine; (ii) minor amino acids such as ornithine and citrulline; (iii) unnatural amino acids, beta-amino acids, synthetic analogs and derivatives of naturally occurring amino acids; and (iv) all enantiomers, diastereomers, isomerically enriched, isotopically labelled (e.g. <sup>2</sup>H, <sup>3</sup>H, <sup>14</sup>C, <sup>15</sup>N), protected forms, and racemic mixtures thereof.

20

In one embodiment, -C(=O)O- and L<sup>2</sup> together form the group:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the linker L<sup>1</sup>, Y is -N(H)-, -O-, -C(=O)N(H)- or -C(=O)O-, and n is 0 to 3. The phenylene ring is optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents as described herein. In one embodiment, the phenylene group is optionally substituted with halo, NO<sub>2</sub>, R or OR.

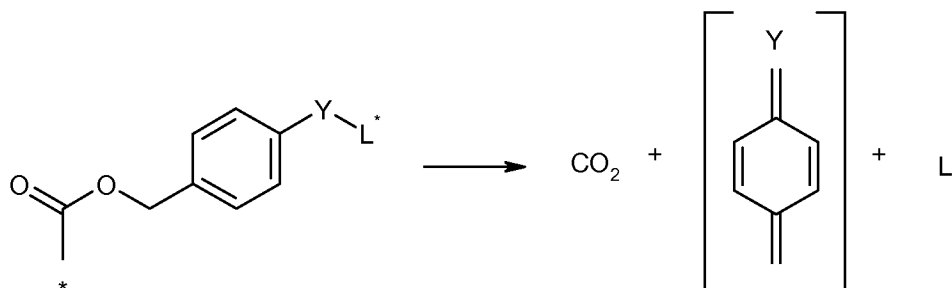
25

30 In one embodiment, Y is NH.

In one embodiment, n is 0 or 1. Preferably, n is 0.

Where Y is NH and n is 0, the self-immolative linker may be referred to as a p-aminobenzylcarbonyl linker (PABC).

5 The self-immolative linker will allow for release of the protected compound when a remote site is activated, proceeding along the lines shown below (for n=0):



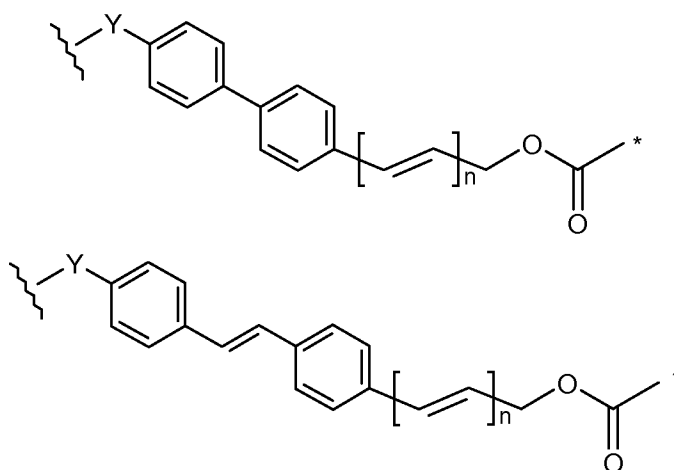
where L\* is the activated form of the remaining portion of the linker. These groups have the advantage of separating the site of activation from the compound being protected. As described above, the phenylene group may be optionally substituted.

10

In one embodiment described herein, the group L\* is a linker L<sup>1</sup> as described herein, which may include a dipeptide group.

In another embodiment, -C(=O)O- and L<sup>2</sup> together form a group selected from:

15

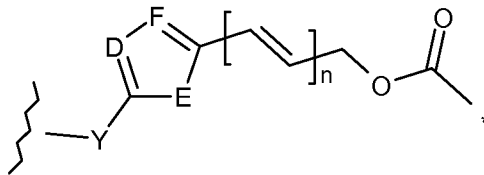


where the asterisk, the wavy line, Y, and n are as defined above. Each phenylene ring is optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents as described herein. In one embodiment, the phenylene ring having the Y substituent is optionally substituted and the phenylene ring not having the Y substituent is unsubstituted. In one embodiment, the

20

phenylene ring having the Y substituent is unsubstituted and the phenylene ring not having the Y substituent is optionally substituted.

In another embodiment,  $-C(=O)O-$  and  $L^2$  together form a group selected from:



5

where the asterisk, the wavy line, Y, and n are as defined above, E is O, S or NR, D is N, CH, or CR, and F is N, CH, or CR.

In one embodiment, D is N.

10 In one embodiment, D is CH.

In one embodiment, E is O or S.

In one embodiment, F is CH.

In a preferred embodiment, the linker is a cathepsin labile linker.

15

In one embodiment,  $L^1$  comprises a dipeptide. The dipeptide may be represented as  $-NH-X_1-X_2-CO-$ , where  $-NH-$  and  $-CO-$  represent the N- and C-terminals of the amino acid groups  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  respectively. The amino acids in the dipeptide may be any combination of natural amino acids. Where the linker is a cathepsin labile linker, the dipeptide may be the

20

site of action for cathepsin-mediated cleavage.

Additionally, for those amino acids groups having carboxyl or amino side chain functionality, for example Glu and Lys respectively, CO and NH may represent that side chain functionality.

25

In one embodiment, the group  $-X_1-X_2-$  in dipeptide,  $-NH-X_1-X_2-CO-$ , is selected from:

-Phe-Lys-,

-Val-Ala-,

-Val-Lys-,

30 -Ala-Lys-,

-Val-Cit-,

-Phe-Cit-,

-Leu-Cit-,  
-Ile-Cit-,  
-Phe-Arg-,  
-Trp-Cit-

5 where Cit is citrulline.

Preferably, the group  $-X_1-X_2-$  in dipeptide,  $-NH-X_1-X_2-CO-$ , is selected from:

-Phe-Lys-,  
-Val-Ala-,  
10 -Val-Lys-,  
-Ala-Lys-,  
-Val-Cit-

Most preferably, the group  $-X_1-X_2-$  in dipeptide,  $-NH-X_1-X_2-CO-$ , is -Phe-Lys- or -Val-Ala-.

15

Other dipeptide combinations may be used, including those described by Dubowchik *et al.*, *Bioconjugate Chemistry*, 2002, 13,855-869, which is incorporated herein by reference.

20

In one embodiment, the amino acid side chain is derivatised, where appropriate. For example, an amino group or carboxy group of an amino acid side chain may be derivatised. In one embodiment, an amino group  $NH_2$  of a side chain amino acid, such as lysine, is a derivatised form selected from the group consisting of  $NHR$  and  $NRR'$ .

25

In one embodiment, a carboxy group  $COOH$  of a side chain amino acid, such as aspartic acid, is a derivatised form selected from the group consisting of  $COOR$ ,  $CONH_2$ ,  $CONHR$  and  $CONRR'$ .

30

In one embodiment, the amino acid side chain is chemically protected, where appropriate. The side chain protecting group may be a group as discussed below in relation to the group  $R^L$ . The present inventors have established that protected amino acid sequences are cleavable by enzymes. For example, it has been established that a dipeptide sequence comprising a Boc side chain-protected Lys residue is cleavable by cathepsin.

35

Protecting groups for the side chains of amino acids are well known in the art and are described in the Novabiochem Catalog. Additional protecting group strategies are set out in Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Greene and Wuts.

Possible side chain protecting groups are shown below for those amino acids having reactive side chain functionality:

Arg: Z, Mtr, Tos;

Asn: Trt, Xan;

5 Asp: Bzl, t-Bu;

Cys: Acm, Bzl, Bzl-OMe, Bzl-Me, Trt;

Glu: Bzl, t-Bu;

Gln: Trt, Xan;

His: Boc, Dnp, Tos, Trt;

10 Lys: Boc, Z-Cl, Fmoc, Z, Alloc;

Ser: Bzl, TBDMS, TBDPS;

Thr: Bz;

Trp: Boc;

Tyr: Bzl, Z, Z-Br.

15

In one embodiment, the side chain protection is selected to be orthogonal to a group provided as, or as part of, a capping group, where present. Thus, the removal of the side chain protecting group does not remove the capping group, or any protecting group functionality that is part of the capping group.

20

In other embodiments of the invention, the amino acids selected are those having no reactive side chain functionality. For example, the amino acids may be selected from: Ala, Gly, Ile, Leu, Met, Phe, Pro, and Val.

In one embodiment, the dipeptide is used in combination with a self-immolative linker. The self-immolative linker may be connected to  $-X_2-$ .

25

Where a self-immolative linker is present,  $-X_2-$  is connected directly to the self-immolative linker. Preferably the group  $-X_2-CO-$  is connected to Y, where Y is NH, thereby forming the group  $-X_2-CO-NH-$ .

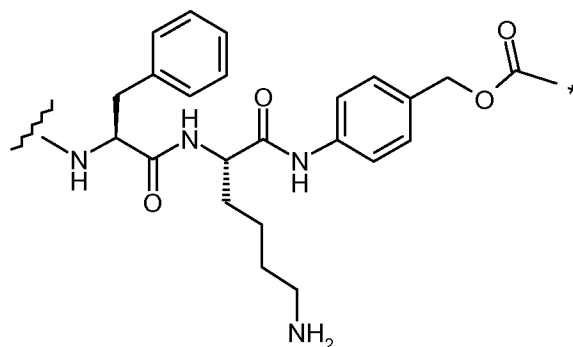
30

$-NH-X_1-$  is connected directly to A. A may comprise the functionality  $-CO-$  thereby to form an amide link with  $-X_1-$ .

In one embodiment,  $L^1$  and  $L^2$  together with  $-OC(=O)-$  comprise the group

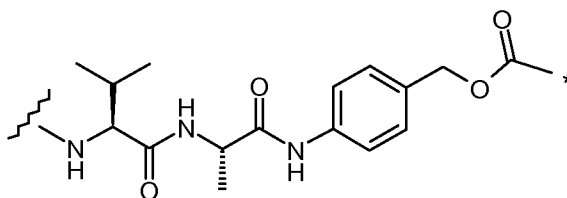
35  $NH-X_1-X_2-CO-PABC-$ . The PABC group is connected directly to the N10 position.

Preferably, the self-immolative linker and the dipeptide together form the group -NH-Phe-Lys-CO-NH-PABC-, which is illustrated below:



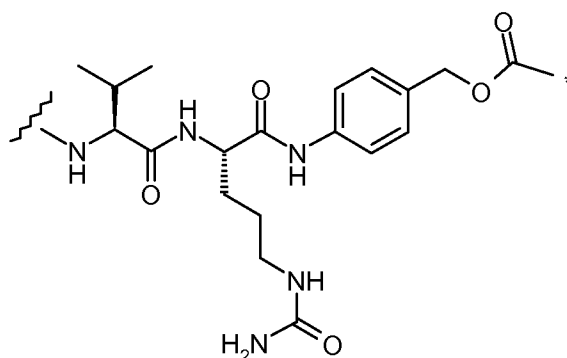
5 where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position, and the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remaining portion of the linker L<sup>1</sup> or the point of attachment to A. Preferably, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to A. The side chain of the Lys amino acid may be protected, for example, with Boc, Fmoc, or Alloc, as described above.

10 Alternatively, the self-immolative linker and the dipeptide together form the group -NH-Val-Ala-CO-NH-PABC-, which is illustrated below:



where the asterisk and the wavy line are as defined above.

15 Alternatively, the self-immolative linker and the dipeptide together form the group -NH-Val-Cit-CO-NH-PABC-, which is illustrated below:



where the asterisk and the wavy line are as defined above.

In one embodiment, A is a covalent bond. Thus, L<sup>1</sup> and the antibody are directly connected. For example, where L<sup>1</sup> comprises a contiguous amino acid sequence, the N-terminus of the sequence may connect directly to the antibody.

5 Thus, where A is a covalent bond, the connection between the antibody and L<sup>1</sup> may be selected from:

-C(=O)NH-,  
 -C(=O)O-,  
 -NHC(=O)-,  
 10 -OC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)O-,  
 -NHC(=O)O-,  
 -OC(=O)NH-,  
 -NHC(=O)NH-,  
 15 -C(=O)NHC(=O)-,  
 -S-,  
 -S-S-,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(=O)-, and  
 =N-NH-.

20

An amino group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to the antibody may be the N-terminus of an amino acid or may be derived from an amino group of an amino acid side chain, for example a lysine amino acid side chain.

25 An carboxyl group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to the antibody may be the C-terminus of an amino acid or may be derived from a carboxyl group of an amino acid side chain, for example a glutamic acid amino acid side chain.

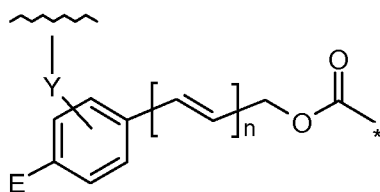
A hydroxyl group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to the antibody may be derived from a hydroxyl group of an amino acid side chain, for example a serine amino acid side chain.

30 A thiol group of L<sup>1</sup> that connects to the antibody may be derived from a thiol group of an amino acid side chain, for example a serine amino acid side chain.

The comments above in relation to the amino, carboxyl, hydroxyl and thiol groups of L<sup>1</sup> also apply to the antibody.

35 In one embodiment, L<sup>2</sup> together with -OC(=O)- represents:

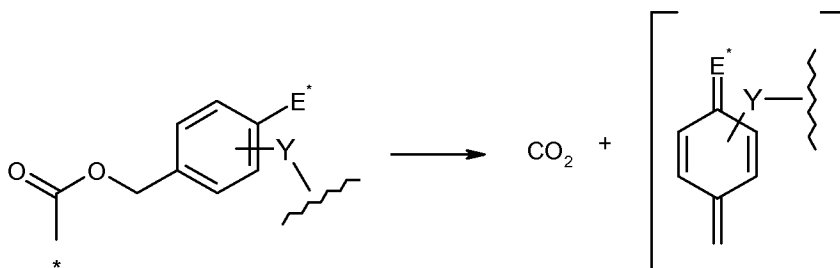




where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to  $L^1$ ,  $n$  is 0 to 3,  $Y$  is a covalent bond or a functional group, and  $E$  is an activatable group, for example by enzymatic action or light, thereby to generate a self-immolative unit. The phenylene ring is optionally further substituted with one, two or three substituents as described herein. In one embodiment, the phenylene group is optionally further substituted with halo,  $\text{NO}_2$ ,  $R$  or  $\text{OR}$ . Preferably  $n$  is 0 or 1, most preferably 0.

- 10  $E$  is selected such that the group is susceptible to activation, e.g. by light or by the action of an enzyme.  $E$  may be  $-\text{NO}_2$  or glucuronic acid. The former may be susceptible to the action of a nitroreductase, the latter to the action of a  $\beta$ -glucuronidase.

In this embodiment, the self-immolative linker will allow for release of the protected compound when  $E$  is activated, proceeding along the lines shown below (for  $n=0$ ):



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position,  $E^*$  is the activated form of  $E$ , and  $Y$  is as described above. These groups have the advantage of separating the site of activation from the compound being protected. As described above, the phenylene group may be optionally further substituted.

The group  $Y$  may be a covalent bond to  $L^1$ .

The group  $Y$  may be a functional group selected from:

- 25  $-\text{C}(=\text{O})-$   
 $-\text{NH}-$   
 $-\text{O}-$   
 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NH}-$ ,

-C(=O)O-,  
 -NHC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)O-,  
 5 -NHC(=O)O-,  
 -OC(=O)NH-,  
 -NHC(=O)NH-,  
 -NHC(=O)NH,  
 -C(=O)NHC(=O)-, and  
 10 -S-.

Where  $L^1$  is a dipeptide, it is preferred that Y is -NH- or -C(=O)-, thereby to form an amide bond between  $L^1$  and Y. In this embodiment, the dipeptide sequence need not be a substrate for an enzymatic activity.

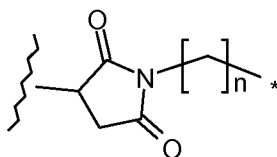
15

In another embodiment, A is a spacer group. Thus,  $L^1$  and the antibody are indirectly connected.

$L^1$  and A may be connected by a bond selected from:

20 -C(=O)NH-,  
 -C(=O)O-,  
 -NHC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)O-,  
 25 -NHC(=O)O-,  
 -OC(=O)NH-, and  
 -NHC(=O)NH-.

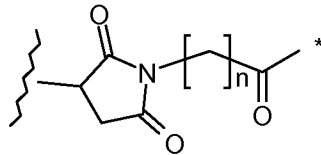
In one embodiment, the group A is:



30

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^1$ , the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

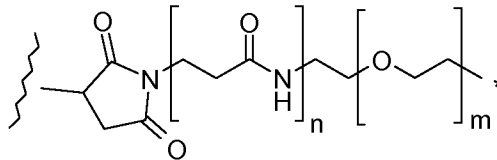
In one embodiment, the group A is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^1$ , the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody, and  $n$  is 0 to 6. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 5.

5

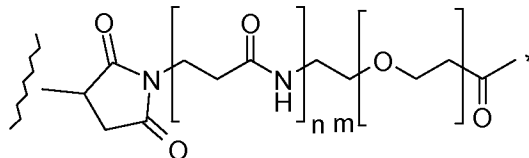
In one embodiment, the group A is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^1$ , the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, and most preferably 4 or 8. In another embodiment,  $m$  is 10 to 30, and preferably 20 to 30. Alternatively,  $m$  is 0 to 50. In this embodiment,  $m$  is preferably 10-40 and  $n$  is 1.

10

In one embodiment, the group A is:



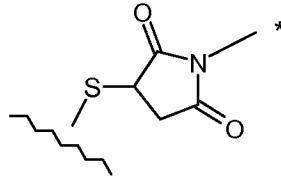
15

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^1$ , the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, and most preferably 4 or 8. In another embodiment,  $m$  is 10 to 30, and preferably 20 to 30. Alternatively,  $m$  is 0 to 50. In this embodiment,  $m$  is preferably 10-40 and  $n$  is 1.

20

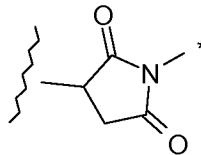
In one embodiment, the connection between the antibody and A is through a thiol residue of the antibody and a maleimide group of A.

In one embodiment, the connection between the antibody and A is:



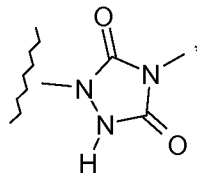
where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the remaining portion of A and the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remaining portion of the antibody. In this embodiment, the S atom is typically derived from the antibody.

In each of the embodiments above, an alternative functionality may be used in place of the maleimide-derived group shown below:



where the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody as before, and the asterisk indicates the bond to the remaining portion of the A group.

In one embodiment, the maleimide-derived group is replaced with the group:



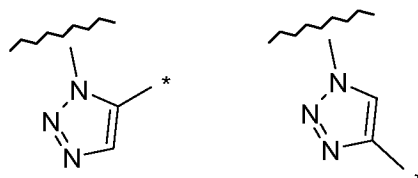
where the wavy line indicates point of attachment to the antibody, and the asterisk indicates the bond to the remaining portion of the A group.

In one embodiment, the maleimide-derived group is replaced with a group, which optionally together with the antibody, is selected from:

- 20 -C(=O)NH-,
- C(=O)O-,
- NHC(=O)-,
- OC(=O)-,
- OC(=O)O-,
- 25 -NHC(=O)O-,
- OC(=O)NH-,
- NHC(=O)NH-,

-NHC(=O)NH,  
 -C(=O)NHC(=O)-,  
 -S-,  
 -S-S-,  
 5 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(=O)-  
 -C(=O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 =N-NH-, and  
 -NH-N=.

10 In one embodiment, the maleimide-derived group is replaced with a group, which optionally together with the antibody, is selected from:



where the wavy line indicates either the point of attachment to the antibody or the bond to the remaining portion of the A group, and the asterisk indicates the other of the point  
 15 of attachment to the antibody or the bond to the remaining portion of the A group.

Other groups suitable for connecting L<sup>1</sup> to the antibody are described in WO 2005/082023.

In one embodiment, the Connecting Group A is present, the Trigger L<sup>1</sup> is present and Self-  
 20 Immolative Linker L<sup>2</sup> is absent. Thus, L<sup>1</sup> and the Drug unit are directly connected via a bond. Equivalently in this embodiment, L<sup>2</sup> is a bond. This may be particularly relevant when D<sup>1</sup> is of Formula II.

L<sup>1</sup> and D may be connected by a bond selected from:

25 -C(=O)N<,  
 -C(=O)O-,  
 -NHC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)-,  
 -OC(=O)O-,  
 30 -NHC(=O)O-,  
 -OC(=O)N<, and  
 -NHC(=O)N<.

where N< or O- are part of D.

In one embodiment, L<sup>1</sup> and D are preferably connected by a bond selected from:

- 5           -C(=O)N<, and  
          -NHC(=O)-.

In one embodiment, L<sup>1</sup> comprises a dipeptide and one end of the dipeptide is linked to D. As described above, the amino acids in the dipeptide may be any combination of natural amino acids and non-natural amino acids. In some embodiments, the dipeptide comprises natural  
10 amino acids. Where the linker is a cathepsin labile linker, the dipeptide is the site of action for cathepsin-mediated cleavage. The dipeptide then is a recognition site for cathepsin.

In one embodiment, the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is selected from:

- 15           -Phe-Lys-,  
          -Val-Ala-,  
          -Val-Lys-,  
          -Ala-Lys-,  
          -Val-Cit-,  
          -Phe-Cit-,  
20           -Leu-Cit-,  
          -Ile-Cit-,  
          -Phe-Arg-, and  
          -Trp-Cit-;

where Cit is citrulline. In such a dipeptide, -NH- is the amino group of X<sub>1</sub>, and CO is the  
25 carbonyl group of X<sub>2</sub>.

Preferably, the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is selected from:

- 30           -Phe-Lys-,  
          -Val-Ala-,  
          -Val-Lys-,  
          -Ala-Lys-, and  
          -Val-Cit-.

Most preferably, the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is -Phe-Lys- or -Val-Ala-.

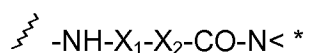
35

Other dipeptide combinations of interest include:

-Gly-Gly-,  
 -Pro-Pro-, and  
 -Val-Glu-.

5 Other dipeptide combinations may be used, including those described above.

In one embodiment, L<sup>1</sup>- D is:

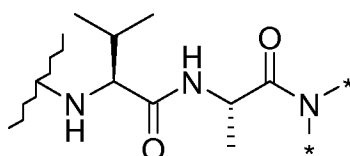


10

where -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO is the dipeptide, -N< is part of the Drug unit, the asterisk indicates the points of attachment to the remainder of the Drug unit, and the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remaining portion of L<sup>1</sup> or the point of attachment to A. Preferably, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to A.

15

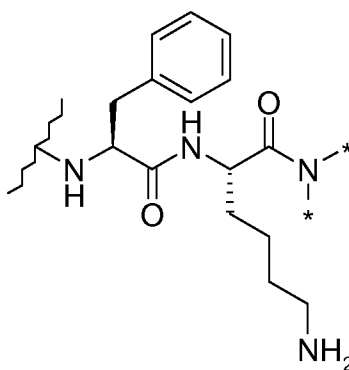
In one embodiment, the dipeptide is valine-alanine and L<sup>1</sup>- D is:



where the asterisks, -N< and the wavy line are as defined above.

20

In one embodiment, the dipeptide is phenylalanine-lysine and L<sup>1</sup>- D is:

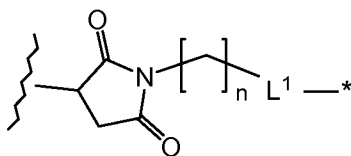


where the asterisks, -N< and the wavy line are as defined above.

25

In one embodiment, the dipeptide is valine-citrulline.

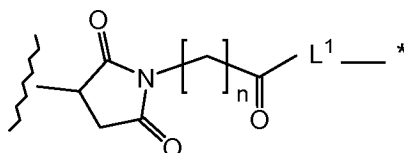
In one embodiment, the groups A-L<sup>1</sup> are:



5

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>2</sup> or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

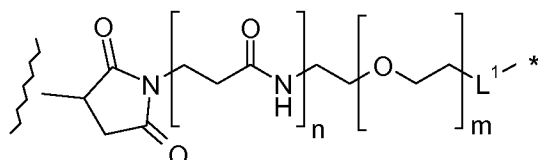
10 In one embodiment, the groups A-L<sup>1</sup> are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>2</sup> or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

15

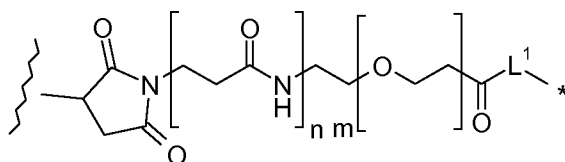
In one embodiment, the groups A-L<sup>1</sup> are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>2</sup> or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, n is 0 or 1, and m is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment, n is 1 and m is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

20

In one embodiment, the groups A-L<sup>1</sup> are:

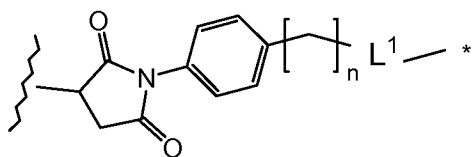




where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 7, preferably 3 to 7, most preferably 3 or 7.

5

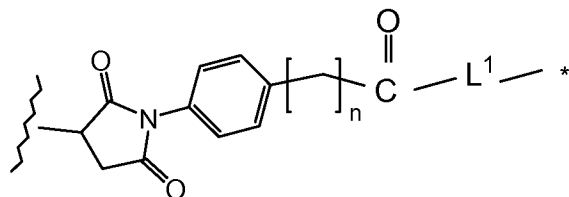
In one embodiment, the groups  $A-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, and  $n$  is 0 to 6. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 5.

10

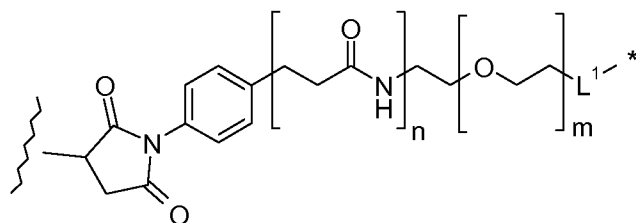
In one embodiment, the groups  $A-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, and  $n$  is 0 to 6. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 5.

15

In one embodiment, the groups  $A-L^1$  are:

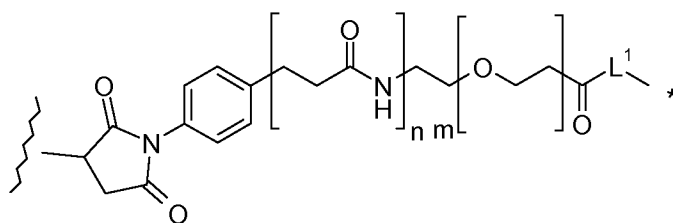


20

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

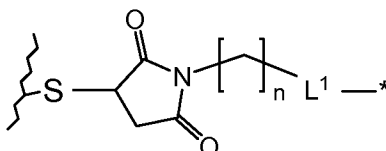
25

In one embodiment, the groups  $A-L^1$  is:



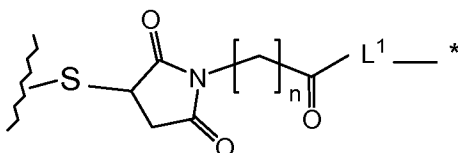
where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, n is 0 or 1, and m is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment, n is 1 and m is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

In one embodiment, the groups A- $L^1$  are:



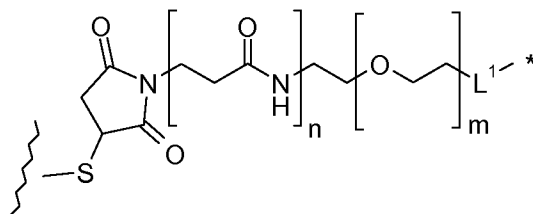
where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, S is a sulfur group of the Ligand unit, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the rest of the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

In one embodiment, the group A- $L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, S is a sulfur group of the Ligand unit, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

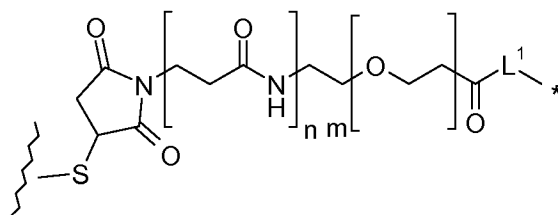
In one embodiment, the groups A<sup>1</sup>- $L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, S is a sulfur group of the Ligand unit, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit, n is 0 or 1, and m is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment, n is 1 and m is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

5

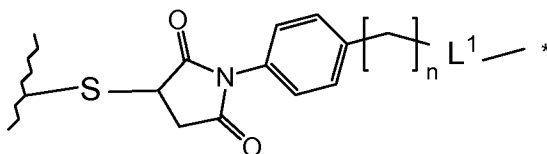
In one embodiment, the groups  $A^1-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the Ligand unit, n is 0 or 1, and m is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment, n is 1 and m is 0 to 10, 1 to 7, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

10

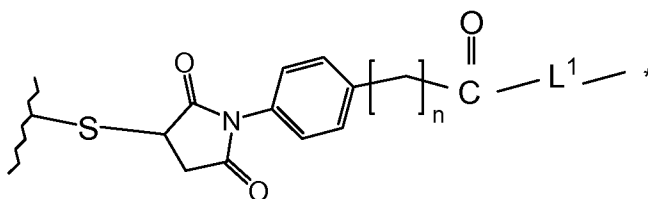
In one embodiment, the groups  $A^1-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

15

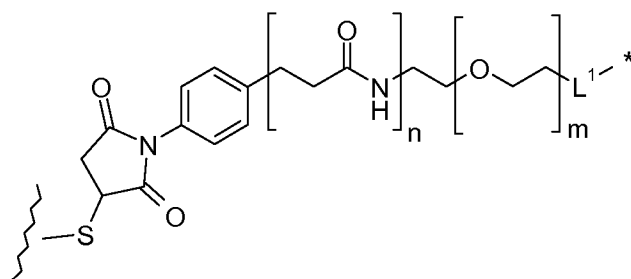
In one embodiment, the groups  $A^1-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit, and n is 0 to 6. In one embodiment, n is 5.

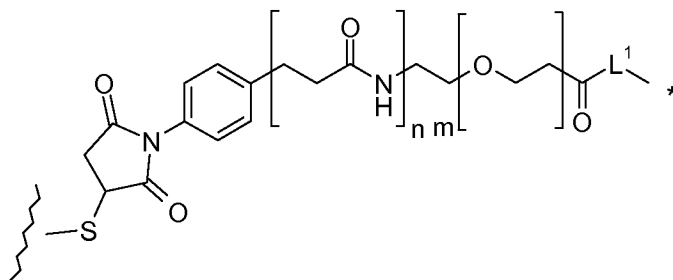
20

In one embodiment, the groups  $A^1-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

In one embodiment, the groups  $A^1-L^1$  are:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^2$  or D, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remainder of the Ligand unit,  $n$  is 0 or 1, and  $m$  is 0 to 30. In a preferred embodiment,  $n$  is 1 and  $m$  is 0 to 10, 1 to 8, preferably 4 to 8, most preferably 4 or 8.

The group  $R^{L'}$  is derivable from the group  $R^L$ . The group  $R^L$  may be converted to a group  $R^{L'}$  by connection of an antibody to a functional group of  $R^L$ . Other steps may be taken to convert  $R^L$  to  $R^{L'}$ . These steps may include the removal of protecting groups, where present, or the installation of an appropriate functional group.

$R^L$

Linkers can include protease-cleavable peptidic moieties comprising one or more amino acid units. Peptide linker reagents may be prepared by solid phase or liquid phase synthesis methods (E. Schröder and K. Lübke, *The Peptides*, volume 1, pp 76-136 (1965) Academic Press) that are well known in the field of peptide chemistry, including t-BOC chemistry (Geiser et al "Automation of solid-phase peptide synthesis" in *Macromolecular Sequencing and Synthesis*, Alan R. Liss, Inc., 1988, pp. 199-218) and Fmoc/HBTU chemistry (Fields, G.

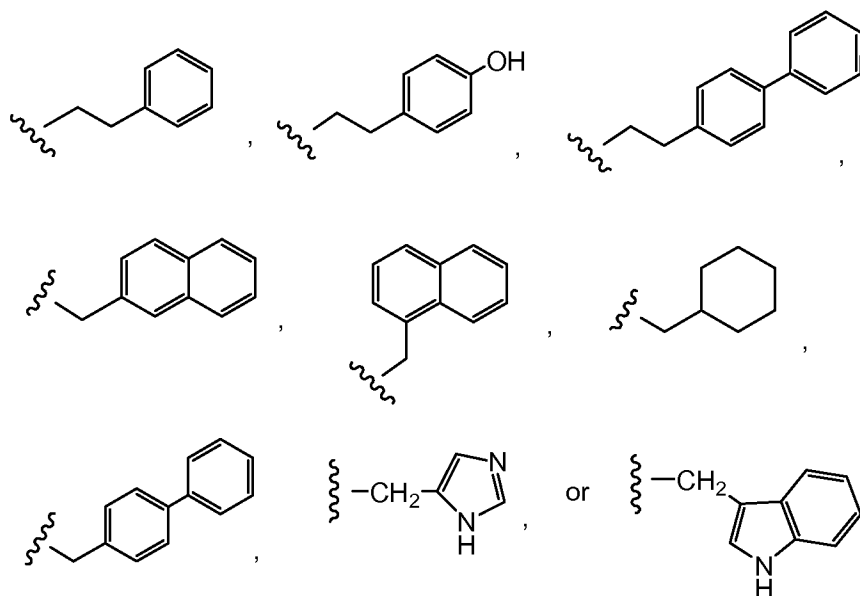
and Noble, R. (1990) "Solid phase peptide synthesis utilizing 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl amino acids", *Int. J. Peptide Protein Res.* 35:161-214), on an automated synthesizer such as the Rainin Symphony Peptide Synthesizer (Protein Technologies, Inc., Tucson, AZ), or Model 433 (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA).

5

Exemplary amino acid linkers include a dipeptide, a tripeptide, a tetrapeptide or a pentapeptide. Exemplary dipeptides include: valine-citrulline (vc or val-cit), alanine-phenylalanine (af or ala-phe). Exemplary tripeptides include: glycine-valine-citrulline (gly-val-cit) and glycine-glycine-glycine (gly-gly-gly). Amino acid residues which comprise an amino acid linker component include those occurring naturally, as well as minor amino acids and non-naturally occurring amino acid analogs, such as citrulline. Amino acid linker components can be designed and optimized in their selectivity for enzymatic cleavage by a particular enzymes, for example, a tumor-associated protease, cathepsin B, C and D, or a plasmin protease.

15

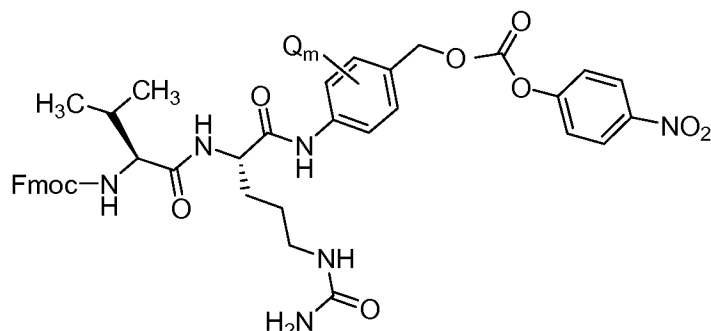
Amino acid side chains include those occurring naturally, as well as minor amino acids and non-naturally occurring amino acid analogs, such as citrulline. Amino acid side chains include hydrogen, methyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, benzyl, p-hydroxybenzyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>OH, -CH(OH)CH<sub>3</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>SCH<sub>3</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>CONH<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CONH<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -  
 20 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHCOCH<sub>3</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHCHO, -  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCOCH<sub>3</sub>, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCHO, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHCONH<sub>2</sub>, -  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCONH<sub>2</sub>, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH(OH)CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, 2-pyridylmethyl-, 3-pyridylmethyl-, 4-pyridylmethyl-, phenyl, cyclohexyl, as well as the following structures:



When the amino acid side chains include other than hydrogen (glycine), the carbon atom to which the amino acid side chain is attached is chiral. Each carbon atom to which the amino acid side chain is attached is independently in the (*S*) or (*R*) configuration, or a racemic mixture. Drug-linker reagents may thus be enantiomerically pure, racemic, or  
 5 diastereomeric.

In exemplary embodiments, amino acid side chains are selected from those of natural and non-natural amino acids, including alanine, 2-amino-2-cyclohexylacetic acid, 2-amino-2-phenylacetic acid, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamine, glutamic acid,  
 10 glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, norleucine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, valine,  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid,  $\alpha,\alpha$ -dimethyl  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid,  $\beta,\beta$ -dimethyl  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid, ornithine, and citrulline (Cit).

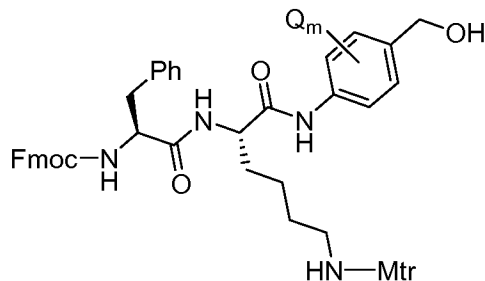
An exemplary valine-citrulline (val-cit or vc) dipeptide linker reagent useful for constructing a  
 15 linker-PBD drug moiety intermediate for conjugation to an antibody, having a para-aminobenzylcarbamoyl (PAB) self-immolative spacer has the structure:



where Q is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl), -halogen, -NO<sub>2</sub> or -CN; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

20

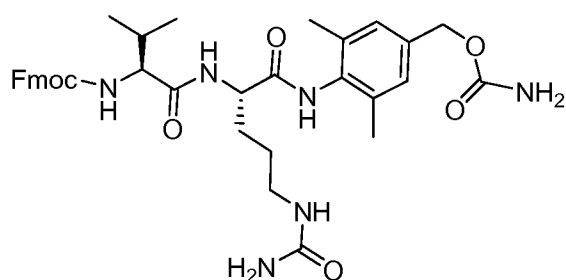
An exemplary phe-lys(Mtr) dipeptide linker reagent having a p-aminobenzyl group can be prepared according to Dubowchik, et al. (1997) Tetrahedron Letters, 38:5257-60, and has the structure:



where Mtr is mono-4-methoxytrityl, Q is C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> alkyl), -halogen, -NO<sub>2</sub> or -CN; and m is an integer ranging from 0-4.

The "self-immolative linker" PAB (para-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl), attaches the drug moiety  
 5 to the antibody in the antibody drug conjugate (Carl et al (1981) J. Med. Chem. 24:479-480; Chakravarty et al (1983) J. Med. Chem. 26:638-644; US 6214345; US20030130189; US20030096743; US6759509; US20040052793; US6218519; US6835807; US6268488; US20040018194; WO98/13059; US20040052793; US6677435; US5621002; US20040121940; WO2004/032828). Other examples of self-immolative spacers besides  
 10 PAB include, but are not limited to: (i) aromatic compounds that are electronically similar to the PAB group such as 2-aminoimidazol-5-methanol derivatives (Hay et al. (1999) Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. 9:2237), thiazoles (US 7375078), multiple, elongated PAB units (de Groot et al (2001) J. Org. Chem. 66:8815-8830); and ortho or para-aminobenzylacetals; and (ii) homologated styryl PAB analogs (US 7223837). Spacers can be used that undergo  
 15 cyclization upon amide bond hydrolysis, such as substituted and unsubstituted 4-aminobutyric acid amides (Rodrigues et al (1995) Chemistry Biology 2:223), appropriately substituted bicyclo[2.2.1] and bicyclo[2.2.2] ring systems (Storm et al (1972) J. Amer. Chem. Soc. 94:5815) and 2-aminophenylpropionic acid amides (Amsberry, et al (1990) J. Org. Chem. 55:5867). Elimination of amine-containing drugs that are substituted at glycine  
 20 (Kingsbury et al (1984) J. Med. Chem. 27:1447) are also examples of self-immolative spacers useful in ADC.

In one embodiment, a valine-citrulline dipeptide PAB analog reagent has a 2,6 dimethyl phenyl group and has the structure:



25

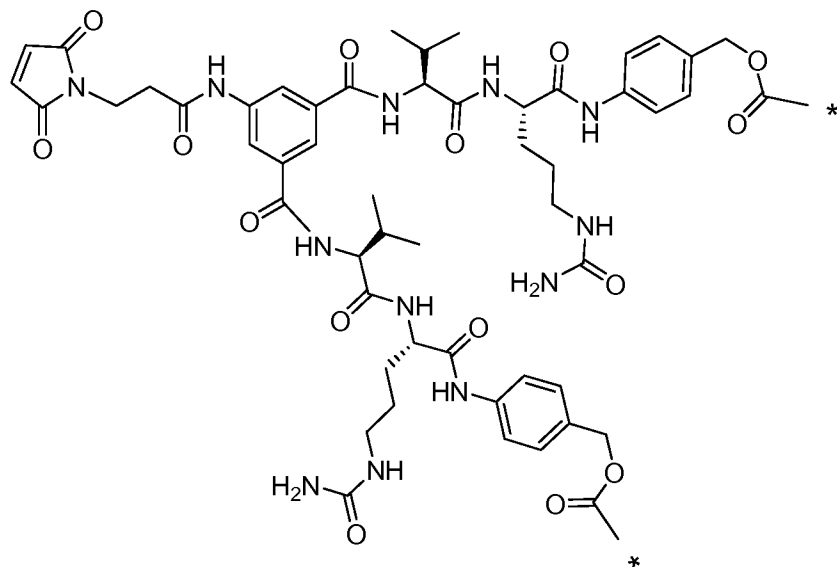
Linker reagents useful for the antibody drug conjugates of the invention include, but are not limited to: BMPEO, BMPS, EMCS, GMBS, HBVS, LC-SMCC, MBS, MPBH, SBAP, SIA, SIAB, SMCC, SMPB, SMPH, sulfo-EMCS, sulfo-GMBS, sulfo-KMUS, sulfo-MBS, sulfo-  
 30 SIAB, sulfo-SMCC, and sulfo-SMPB, and SVSB (succinimidyl-(4-vinylsulfone)benzoate), and bis-maleimide reagents: DTME, BMB, BMDDB, BMH, BMOE, 1,8-bis-





bears only one reactive cysteine thiol group, a multitude of drug moieties may be attached through a dendritic or branched linker.

One exemplary embodiment of a dendritic type linker has the structure:



5

where the asterisk indicate the point of attachment to the N10 position of a PBD moiety.

#### *R<sup>C</sup>, Capping Group*

The conjugate of the first aspect of the invention may have a capping group R<sup>C</sup> at the N10 position. Compound E may have a capping group R<sup>C</sup>.

10

In one embodiment, where the conjugate is a dimer with each monomer being of formula (A), the group R<sup>10</sup> in one of the monomer units is a capping group R<sup>C</sup> or is a group R<sup>10</sup>.

15 In one embodiment, where the conjugate is a dimer with each monomer being of formula (A), the group R<sup>10</sup> in one of the monomer units is a capping group R<sup>C</sup>.

In one embodiment, where compound E is a dimer with each monomer being of formula (E), the group  $R^L$  in one of the monomer units is a capping group  $R^C$  or is a linker for connection to an antibody.

- 5 In one embodiment, where compound E is a dimer with each monomer being of formula (E), the group  $R^L$  in one of the monomer units is a capping group  $R^C$ .

The group  $R^C$  is removable from the N10 position of the PBD moiety to leave an N10-C11 imine bond, a carbinolamine, a substituted carbinolamine, where  $QR^{11}$  is  $OSO_3M$ , a bisulfite adduct, a thiocarbinolamine, a substituted thiocarbinolamine, or a substituted carbinolamine.  
10

In one embodiment,  $R^C$ , may be a protecting group that is removable to leave an N10-C11 imine bond, a carbinolamine, a substituted carbinolamine, or, where  $QR^{11}$  is  $OSO_3M$ , a bisulfite adduct. In one embodiment,  $R^C$  is a protecting group that is removable to leave an  
15 N10-C11 imine bond.

The group  $R^C$  is intended to be removable under the same conditions as those required for the removal of the group  $R^{10}$ , for example to yield an N10-C11 imine bond, a carbinolamine and so on. The capping group acts as a protecting group for the intended functionality at the  
20 N10 position. The capping group is intended not to be reactive towards an antibody. For example,  $R^C$  is not the same as  $R^L$ .

Compounds having a capping group may be used as intermediates in the synthesis of dimers having an imine monomer. Alternatively, compounds having a capping group may be  
25 used as conjugates, where the capping group is removed at the target location to yield an imine, a carbinolamine, a substituted carbinolamine and so on. Thus, in this embodiment, the capping group may be referred to as a therapeutically removable nitrogen protecting group, as defined in the inventors' earlier application WO 00/12507.

- 30 In one embodiment, the group  $R^C$  is removable under the conditions that cleave the linker  $R^L$  of the group  $R^{10}$ . Thus, in one embodiment, the capping group is cleavable by the action of an enzyme.

In an alternative embodiment, the capping group is removable prior to the connection of the  
35 linker  $R^L$  to the antibody. In this embodiment, the capping group is removable under conditions that do not cleave the linker  $R^L$ .

Where a compound includes a functional group  $G^1$  to form a connection to the antibody, the capping group is removable prior to the addition or unmasking of  $G^1$ .

- 5 The capping group may be used as part of a protecting group strategy to ensure that only one of the monomer units in a dimer is connected to an antibody.

The capping group may be used as a mask for a N10-C11 imine bond. The capping group may be removed at such time as the imine functionality is required in the compound. The  
10 capping group is also a mask for a carbinolamine, a substituted carbinolamine, and a bisulfite adduct, as described above.

$R^C$  may be an N10 protecting group, such as those groups described in the inventors' earlier application, WO 00/12507. In one embodiment,  $R^C$  is a therapeutically removable nitrogen  
15 protecting group, as defined in the inventors' earlier application, WO 00/12507.

In one embodiment,  $R^C$  is a carbamate protecting group.

In one embodiment, the carbamate protecting group is selected from:

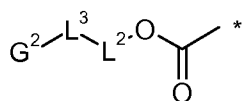
20 Alloc, Fmoc, Boc, Troc, Teoc, Psec, Cbz and PNZ.

Optionally, the carbamate protecting group is further selected from Moc.

In one embodiment,  $R^C$  is a linker group  $R^L$  lacking the functional group for connection to the  
25 antibody.

This application is particularly concerned with those  $R^C$  groups which are carbamates.

In one embodiment,  $R^C$  is a group:



30

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position,  $G^2$  is a terminating group,  $L^3$  is a covalent bond or a cleavable linker  $L^1$ ,  $L^2$  is a covalent bond or together with  $OC(=O)$  forms a self-immolative linker.

Where  $L^3$  and  $L^2$  are both covalent bonds,  $G^2$  and  $OC(=O)$  together form a carbamate protecting group as defined above.

$L^1$  is as defined above in relation to  $R^{10}$ .

5  $L^2$  is as defined above in relation to  $R^{10}$ .

Various terminating groups are described below, including those based on well known protecting groups.

10 In one embodiment  $L^3$  is a cleavable linker  $L^1$ , and  $L^2$ , together with  $OC(=O)$ , forms a self-immolative linker. In this embodiment,  $G^2$  is Ac (acetyl) or Moc, or a carbamate protecting group selected from:

Alloc, Fmoc, Boc, Troc, Teoc, Psec, Cbz and PNZ.

Optionally, the carbamate protecting group is further selected from Moc.

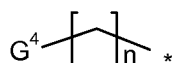
15

In another embodiment,  $G^2$  is an acyl group  $-C(=O)G^3$ , where  $G^3$  is selected from alkyl (including cycloalkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl), heteroalkyl, heterocyclyl and aryl (including heteroaryl and carboaryl). These groups may be optionally substituted. The acyl group together with an amino group of  $L^3$  or  $L^2$ , where appropriate, may form an amide bond. The  
20 acyl group together with a hydroxy group of  $L^3$  or  $L^2$ , where appropriate, may form an ester bond.

In one embodiment,  $G^3$  is heteroalkyl. The heteroalkyl group may comprise polyethylene glycol. The heteroalkyl group may have a heteroatom, such as O or N, adjacent to the acyl  
25 group, thereby forming a carbamate or carbonate group, where appropriate, with a heteroatom present in the group  $L^3$  or  $L^2$ , where appropriate.

In one embodiment,  $G^3$  is selected from  $NH_2$ ,  $NHR$  and  $NRR'$ . Preferably,  $G^3$  is  $NRR'$ .

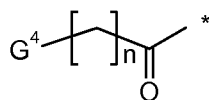
30 In one embodiment  $G^2$  is the group:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^3$ ,  $n$  is 0 to 6 and  $G^4$  is selected from OH, OR, SH, SR, COOR,  $CONH_2$ ,  $CONHR$ ,  $CONRR'$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NHR$ ,  $NRR'$ ,  $NO_2$ , and halo. The groups OH, SH,  $NH_2$  and  $NHR$  are protected. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 1 to 6,

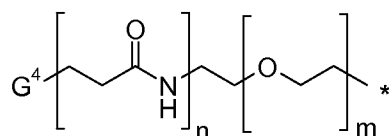
and preferably n is 5. In one embodiment, G<sup>4</sup> is OR, SR, COOR, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR, CONRR', and NRR'. In one embodiment, G<sup>4</sup> is OR, SR, and NRR'. Preferably G<sup>4</sup> is selected from OR and NRR', most preferably G<sup>4</sup> is OR. Most preferably G<sup>4</sup> is OMe.

5 In one embodiment, the group G<sup>2</sup> is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>3</sup>, and n and G<sup>4</sup> are as defined above.

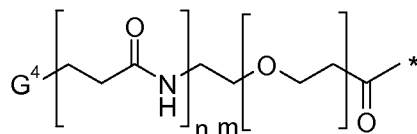
10 In one embodiment, the group G<sup>2</sup> is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>3</sup>, n is 0 or 1, m is 0 to 50, and G<sup>4</sup> is selected from OH, OR, SH, SR, COOR, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR, CONRR', NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', NO<sub>2</sub>, and halo. In a preferred embodiment, n is 1 and m is 0 to 10, 1 to 2, preferably 4 to 8, and most preferably 4 or 8. In another embodiment, n is 1 and m is 10 to 50, preferably 20 to 40. The groups OH, SH, NH<sub>2</sub> and NHR are protected. In one embodiment, G<sup>4</sup> is OR, SR, COOR, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR, CONRR', and NRR'. In one embodiment, G<sup>4</sup> is OR, SR, and NRR'. Preferably G<sup>4</sup> is selected from OR and NRR', most preferably G<sup>4</sup> is OR. Preferably G<sup>4</sup> is OMe.

20

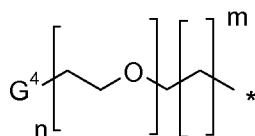
In one embodiment, the group G<sup>2</sup> is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>3</sup>, and n, m and G<sup>4</sup> are as defined above.

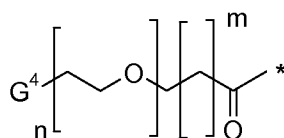
25

In one embodiment, the group  $G^2$  is:



where  $n$  is 1-20,  $m$  is 0-6, and  $G^4$  is selected from OH, OR, SH, SR, COOR, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR, CONRR', NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', NO<sub>2</sub>, and halo. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 1-10. In another embodiment,  $n$  is 10 to 50, preferably 20 to 40. In one embodiment,  $n$  is 1. In one embodiment,  $m$  is 1. The groups OH, SH, NH<sub>2</sub> and NHR are protected. In one embodiment,  $G^4$  is OR, SR, COOR, CONH<sub>2</sub>, CONHR, CONRR', and NRR'. In one embodiment,  $G^4$  is OR, SR, and NRR'. Preferably  $G^4$  is selected from OR and NRR', most preferably  $G^4$  is OR. Preferably  $G^4$  is OMe.

In one embodiment, the group  $G^2$  is:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to  $L^3$ , and  $n$ ,  $m$  and  $G^4$  are as defined above.

In each of the embodiments above  $G^4$  may be OH, SH, NH<sub>2</sub> and NHR. These groups are preferably protected.

In one embodiment, OH is protected with Bzl, TBDMS, or TBDPS.

In one embodiment, SH is protected with Acn, Bzl, Bzl-OMe, Bzl-Me, or Trt.

In one embodiment, NH<sub>2</sub> or NHR are protected with Boc, Moc, Z-Cl, Fmoc, Z, or Alloc.

In one embodiment, the group  $G^2$  is present in combination with a group  $L^3$ , which group is a dipeptide.

The capping group is not intended for connection to the antibody. Thus, the other monomer present in the dimer serves as the point of connection to the antibody via a linker.

Accordingly, it is preferred that the functionality present in the capping group is not available for reaction with an antibody. Thus, reactive functional groups such as OH, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, COOH are preferably avoided. However, such functionality may be present in the capping group if protected, as described above.

*Embodiments*

Embodiments of the present invention include ConjA wherein the antibody is as defined above.

5

Embodiments of the present invention include ConjB wherein the antibody is as defined above.

10

Embodiments of the present invention include ConjC wherein the antibody is as defined above.

Embodiments of the present invention include ConjD wherein the antibody is as defined above.

15

Embodiments of the present invention include ConjE wherein the antibody is as defined above.

As mentioned above, some embodiments of the invention exclude ConjA, ConjB, ConjC, ConjD and ConjE.

20

*Drug loading*

The drug loading is the average number of PBD drugs per antibody, e.g. antibody. Where the compounds of the invention are bound to cysteines, drug loading may range from 1 to 8 drugs ( $D^L$ ) per antibody, i.e. where 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 drug moieties are covalently attached to the antibody. Compositions of conjugates include collections of antibodies, conjugated with a range of drugs, from 1 to 8. Where the compounds of the invention are bound to lysines, drug loading may range from 1 to 80 drugs ( $D^L$ ) per antibody, although an upper limit of 40, 20, 10 or 8 may be preferred. Compositions of conjugates include collections of antibodies, conjugated with a range of drugs, from 1 to 80, 1 to 40, 1 to 20, 1 to 10 or 1 to 8.

30

The average number of drugs per antibody in preparations of ADC from conjugation reactions may be characterized by conventional means such as UV, reverse phase HPLC, HIC, mass spectroscopy, ELISA assay, and electrophoresis. The quantitative distribution of ADC in terms of  $p$  may also be determined. By ELISA, the averaged value of  $p$  in a particular preparation of ADC may be determined (Hamblett et al (2004) Clin. Cancer Res.

35

10:7063-7070; Sanderson et al (2005) Clin. Cancer Res. 11:843-852). However, the distribution of  $p$  (drug) values is not discernible by the antibody-antigen binding and detection limitation of ELISA. Also, ELISA assay for detection of antibody-drug conjugates does not determine where the drug moieties are attached to the antibody, such as the heavy  
5 chain or light chain fragments, or the particular amino acid residues. In some instances, separation, purification, and characterization of homogeneous ADC where  $p$  is a certain value from ADC with other drug loadings may be achieved by means such as reverse phase HPLC or electrophoresis. Such techniques are also applicable to other types of conjugates.

10 For some antibody-drug conjugates,  $p$  may be limited by the number of attachment sites on the antibody. For example, an antibody may have only one or several cysteine thiol groups, or may have only one or several sufficiently reactive thiol groups through which a linker may be attached. Higher drug loading, e.g.  $p > 5$ , may cause aggregation, insolubility, toxicity, or loss of cellular permeability of certain antibody-drug conjugates.

15 Typically, fewer than the theoretical maximum of drug moieties are conjugated to an antibody during a conjugation reaction. An antibody may contain, for example, many lysine residues that do not react with the drug-linker intermediate (D-L) or linker reagent. Only the most reactive lysine groups may react with an amine-reactive linker reagent. Also, only the  
20 most reactive cysteine thiol groups may react with a thiol-reactive linker reagent. Generally, antibodies do not contain many, if any, free and reactive cysteine thiol groups which may be linked to a drug moiety. Most cysteine thiol residues in the antibodies of the compounds exist as disulfide bridges and must be reduced with a reducing agent such as dithiothreitol (DTT) or TCEP, under partial or total reducing conditions. The loading (drug/antibody ratio)  
25 of an ADC may be controlled in several different manners, including: (i) limiting the molar excess of drug-linker intermediate (D-L) or linker reagent relative to antibody, (ii) limiting the conjugation reaction time or temperature, and (iii) partial or limiting reductive conditions for cysteine thiol modification.

30 Certain antibodies have reducible interchain disulfides, i.e. cysteine bridges. Antibodies may be made reactive for conjugation with linker reagents by treatment with a reducing agent such as DTT (dithiothreitol). Each cysteine bridge will thus form, theoretically, two reactive thiol nucleophiles. Additional nucleophilic groups can be introduced into antibodies through the reaction of lysines with 2-iminothiolane (Traut's reagent) resulting in conversion of an  
35 amine into a thiol. Reactive thiol groups may be introduced into the antibody (or fragment thereof) by engineering one, two, three, four, or more cysteine residues (e.g., preparing



mutant antibodies comprising one or more non-native cysteine amino acid residues). US 7521541 teaches engineering antibodies by introduction of reactive cysteine amino acids.

5 Cysteine amino acids may be engineered at reactive sites in an antibody and which do not form intrachain or intermolecular disulfide linkages (Junutula, et al., 2008b Nature Biotech., 26(8):925-932; Dornan et al (2009) Blood 114(13):2721-2729; US 7521541; US 7723485; WO2009/052249). The engineered cysteine thiols may react with linker reagents or the drug-linker reagents of the present invention which have thiol-reactive, electrophilic groups such as maleimide or alpha-halo amides to form ADC with cysteine engineered antibodies and the PBD drug moieties. The location of the drug moiety can thus be designed,  
10 controlled, and known. The drug loading can be controlled since the engineered cysteine thiol groups typically react with thiol-reactive linker reagents or drug-linker reagents in high yield. Engineering an IgG antibody to introduce a cysteine amino acid by substitution at a single site on the heavy or light chain gives two new cysteines on the symmetrical antibody.  
15 A drug loading near 2 can be achieved with near homogeneity of the conjugation product ADC.

Alternatively, site-specific conjugation can be achieved by engineering antibodies to contain unnatural amino acids in their heavy and/or light chains as described by Axup et al. ((2012),  
20 Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 109(40):16101-16116). The unnatural amino acids provide the additional advantage that orthogonal chemistry can be designed to attach the linker reagent and drug.

Where more than one nucleophilic or electrophilic group of the antibody reacts with a drug-linker intermediate, or linker reagent followed by drug moiety reagent, then the resulting  
25 product is a mixture of ADC compounds with a distribution of drug moieties attached to an antibody, e.g. 1, 2, 3, etc. Liquid chromatography methods such as polymeric reverse phase (PLRP) and hydrophobic interaction (HIC) may separate compounds in the mixture by drug loading value. Preparations of ADC with a single drug loading value ( $p$ ) may be isolated,  
30 however, these single loading value ADCs may still be heterogeneous mixtures because the drug moieties may be attached, via the linker, at different sites on the antibody.

Thus the antibody-drug conjugate compositions of the invention include mixtures of antibody-drug conjugate compounds where the antibody has one or more PBD drug  
35 moieties and where the drug moieties may be attached to the antibody at various amino acid residues.

In one embodiment, the average number of dimer pyrrolobenzodiazepine groups per antibody is in the range 1 to 20. In some embodiments the range is selected from 1 to 8, 2 to 8, 2 to 6, 2 to 4, and 4 to 8.

5

In some embodiments, there is one dimer pyrrolobenzodiazepine group per antibody.

#### *Includes Other Forms*

Unless otherwise specified, included in the above are the well known ionic, salt, solvate, and protected forms of these substituents. For example, a reference to carboxylic acid (-COOH) also includes the anionic (carboxylate) form (-COO<sup>-</sup>), a salt or solvate thereof, as well as conventional protected forms. Similarly, a reference to an amino group includes the protonated form (-N<sup>+</sup>HR<sup>1</sup>R<sup>2</sup>), a salt or solvate of the amino group, for example, a hydrochloride salt, as well as conventional protected forms of an amino group. Similarly, a reference to a hydroxyl group also includes the anionic form (-O<sup>-</sup>), a salt or solvate thereof, as well as conventional protected forms.

10  
15

#### *Salts*

It may be convenient or desirable to prepare, purify, and/or handle a corresponding salt of the active compound, for example, a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are discussed in Berge, *et al.*, *J. Pharm. Sci.*, **66**, 1-19 (1977).

20

For example, if the compound is anionic, or has a functional group which may be anionic (e.g. -COOH may be -COO<sup>-</sup>), then a salt may be formed with a suitable cation. Examples of suitable inorganic cations include, but are not limited to, alkali metal ions such as Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup>, alkaline earth cations such as Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup>, and other cations such as Al<sup>3+</sup>. Examples of suitable organic cations include, but are not limited to, ammonium ion (i.e. NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>) and substituted ammonium ions (e.g. NH<sub>3</sub>R<sup>+</sup>, NH<sub>2</sub>R<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup>, NHR<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup>, NR<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>). Examples of some suitable substituted ammonium ions are those derived from: ethylamine, diethylamine, dicyclohexylamine, triethylamine, butylamine, ethylenediamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, piperazine, benzylamine, phenylbenzylamine, choline, meglumine, and tromethamine, as well as amino acids, such as lysine and arginine. An example of a common quaternary ammonium ion is N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>.

25  
30

35

If the compound is cationic, or has a functional group which may be cationic (e.g.  $\text{-NH}_2$  may be  $\text{-NH}_3^+$ ), then a salt may be formed with a suitable anion. Examples of suitable inorganic

anions include, but are not limited to, those derived from the following inorganic acids: hydrochloric, hydrobromic, hydroiodic, sulfuric, sulfurous, nitric, nitrous, phosphoric, and

5 phosphorous.

Examples of suitable organic anions include, but are not limited to, those derived from the following organic acids: 2-acetoxybenzoic, acetic, ascorbic, aspartic, benzoic,

camphorsulfonic, cinnamic, citric, edetic, ethanedisulfonic, ethanesulfonic, fumaric,

10 glucoheptonic, gluconic, glutamic, glycolic, hydroxymaleic, hydroxynaphthalene carboxylic,

isethionic, lactic, lactobionic, lauric, maleic, malic, methanesulfonic, mucic, oleic, oxalic,

palmitic, pamoic, pantothenic, phenylacetic, phenylsulfonic, propionic, pyruvic, salicylic,

stearic, succinic, sulfanilic, tartaric, toluenesulfonic, trifluoroacetic acid and valeric.

Examples of suitable polymeric organic anions include, but are not limited to, those derived

15 from the following polymeric acids: tannic acid, carboxymethyl cellulose.

### Solvates

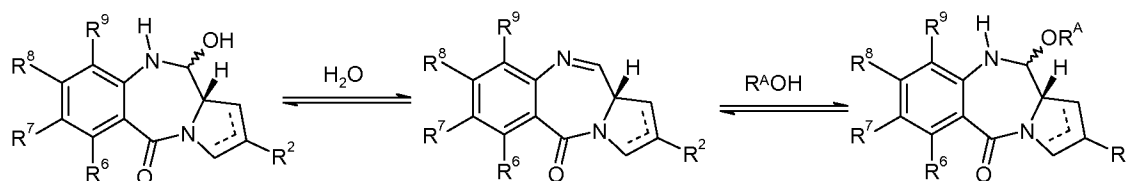
It may be convenient or desirable to prepare, purify, and/or handle a corresponding solvate of the active compound. The term "solvate" is used herein in the conventional sense to refer

20 to a complex of solute (e.g. active compound, salt of active compound) and solvent. If the

solvent is water, the solvate may be conveniently referred to as a hydrate, for example, a mono-hydrate, a di-hydrate, a tri-hydrate, etc.

The invention includes compounds where a solvent adds across the imine bond of the PBD moiety, which is illustrated below where the solvent is water or an alcohol ( $\text{R}^A\text{OH}$ , where  $\text{R}^A$  is  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl):

25



These forms can be called the carbinolamine and carbinolamine ether forms of the PBD (as described in the section relating to  $\text{R}^{10}$  above). The balance of these equilibria depend on

30 the conditions in which the compounds are found, as well as the nature of the moiety itself.

These particular compounds may be isolated in solid form, for example, by lyophilisation.

*Isomers*

Certain compounds of the invention may exist in one or more particular geometric, optical, enantiomeric, diastereomeric, epimeric, atropic, stereoisomeric, tautomeric, conformational, or anomeric forms, including but not limited to, cis- and trans-forms; E- and Z-forms; c-, t-, and r- forms; endo- and exo-forms; R-, S-, and meso-forms; D- and L-forms; d- and l-forms; (+) and (-) forms; keto-, enol-, and enolate-forms; syn- and anti-forms; synclinal- and anticlinal-forms;  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -forms; axial and equatorial forms; boat-, chair-, twist-, envelope-, and halfchair-forms; and combinations thereof, hereinafter collectively referred to as “isomers” (or “isomeric forms”).

10

The term “chiral” refers to molecules which have the property of non-superimposability of the mirror image partner, while the term “achiral” refers to molecules which are superimposable on their mirror image partner.

15 The term “stereoisomers” refers to compounds which have identical chemical constitution, but differ with regard to the arrangement of the atoms or groups in space.

“Diastereomer” refers to a stereoisomer with two or more centers of chirality and whose molecules are not mirror images of one another. Diastereomers have different physical properties, e.g. melting points, boiling points, spectral properties, and reactivities. Mixtures of diastereomers may separate under high resolution analytical procedures such as electrophoresis and chromatography.

20

“Enantiomers” refer to two stereoisomers of a compound which are non-superimposable mirror images of one another.

25

Stereochemical definitions and conventions used herein generally follow S. P. Parker, Ed., *McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Chemical Terms* (1984) McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York; and Eliel, E. and Wilen, S., “Stereochemistry of Organic Compounds”, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1994. The compounds of the invention may contain asymmetric or chiral centers, and therefore exist in different stereoisomeric forms. It is intended that all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds of the invention, including but not limited to, diastereomers, enantiomers and atropisomers, as well as mixtures thereof such as racemic mixtures, form part of the present invention. Many organic compounds exist in optically active forms, i.e., they have the ability to rotate the plane of plane-polarized light. In describing an optically active compound, the prefixes D and L, or R and S, are used to

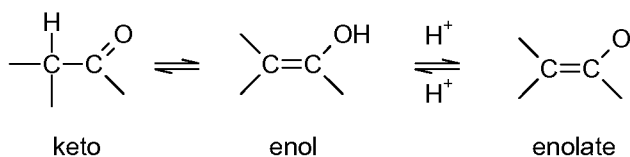
30

35

denote the absolute configuration of the molecule about its chiral center(s). The prefixes d and l or (+) and (-) are employed to designate the sign of rotation of plane-polarized light by the compound, with (-) or l meaning that the compound is levorotatory. A compound prefixed with (+) or d is dextrorotatory. For a given chemical structure, these stereoisomers are identical except that they are mirror images of one another. A specific stereoisomer may also be referred to as an enantiomer, and a mixture of such isomers is often called an enantiomeric mixture. A 50:50 mixture of enantiomers is referred to as a racemic mixture or a racemate, which may occur where there has been no stereoselection or stereospecificity in a chemical reaction or process. The terms "racemic mixture" and "racemate" refer to an equimolar mixture of two enantiomeric species, devoid of optical activity.

Note that, except as discussed below for tautomeric forms, specifically excluded from the term "isomers", as used herein, are structural (or constitutional) isomers (i.e. isomers which differ in the connections between atoms rather than merely by the position of atoms in space). For example, a reference to a methoxy group, -OCH<sub>3</sub>, is not to be construed as a reference to its structural isomer, a hydroxymethyl group, -CH<sub>2</sub>OH. Similarly, a reference to ortho-chlorophenyl is not to be construed as a reference to its structural isomer, meta-chlorophenyl. However, a reference to a class of structures may well include structurally isomeric forms falling within that class (e.g. C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl includes n-propyl and iso-propyl; butyl includes n-, iso-, sec-, and tert-butyl; methoxyphenyl includes ortho-, meta-, and para-methoxyphenyl).

The above exclusion does not pertain to tautomeric forms, for example, keto-, enol-, and enolate-forms, as in, for example, the following tautomeric pairs: keto/enol (illustrated below), imine/enamine, amide/imino alcohol, amidine/amidone, nitroso/oxime, thioketone/enethiol, N-nitroso/hydroxyazo, and nitro/aci-nitro.



The term "tautomer" or "tautomeric form" refers to structural isomers of different energies which are interconvertible via a low energy barrier. For example, proton tautomers (also known as prototropic tautomers) include interconversions via migration of a proton, such as

keto-enol and imine-enamine isomerizations. Valence tautomers include interconversions by reorganization of some of the bonding electrons.

Note that specifically included in the term "isomer" are compounds with one or more isotopic substitutions. For example, H may be in any isotopic form, including  $^1\text{H}$ ,  $^2\text{H}$  (D), and  $^3\text{H}$  (T); C may be in any isotopic form, including  $^{12}\text{C}$ ,  $^{13}\text{C}$ , and  $^{14}\text{C}$ ; O may be in any isotopic form, including  $^{16}\text{O}$  and  $^{18}\text{O}$ ; and the like.

Examples of isotopes that can be incorporated into compounds of the invention include isotopes of hydrogen, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorous, fluorine, and chlorine, such as, but not limited to  $^2\text{H}$  (deuterium, D),  $^3\text{H}$  (tritium),  $^{11}\text{C}$ ,  $^{13}\text{C}$ ,  $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $^{15}\text{N}$ ,  $^{18}\text{F}$ ,  $^{31}\text{P}$ ,  $^{32}\text{P}$ ,  $^{35}\text{S}$ ,  $^{36}\text{Cl}$ , and  $^{125}\text{I}$ . Various isotopically labeled compounds of the present invention, for example those into which radioactive isotopes such as  $^3\text{H}$ ,  $^{13}\text{C}$ , and  $^{14}\text{C}$  are incorporated. Such isotopically labelled compounds may be useful in metabolic studies, reaction kinetic studies, detection or imaging techniques, such as positron emission tomography (PET) or single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) including drug or substrate tissue distribution assays, or in radioactive treatment of patients. Deuterium labelled or substituted therapeutic compounds of the invention may have improved DMPK (drug metabolism and pharmacokinetics) properties, relating to distribution, metabolism, and excretion (ADME). Substitution with heavier isotopes such as deuterium may afford certain therapeutic advantages resulting from greater metabolic stability, for example increased in vivo half-life or reduced dosage requirements. An  $^{18}\text{F}$  labeled compound may be useful for PET or SPECT studies. Isotopically labeled compounds of this invention and prodrugs thereof can generally be prepared by carrying out the procedures disclosed in the schemes or in the examples and preparations described below by substituting a readily available isotopically labeled reagent for a non-isotopically labeled reagent. Further, substitution with heavier isotopes, particularly deuterium (i.e.,  $^2\text{H}$  or D) may afford certain therapeutic advantages resulting from greater metabolic stability, for example increased in vivo half-life or reduced dosage requirements or an improvement in therapeutic index. It is understood that deuterium in this context is regarded as a substituent. The concentration of such a heavier isotope, specifically deuterium, may be defined by an isotopic enrichment factor. In the compounds of this invention any atom not specifically designated as a particular isotope is meant to represent any stable isotope of that atom.

Unless otherwise specified, a reference to a particular compound includes all such isomeric forms, including (wholly or partially) racemic and other mixtures thereof. Methods for the

preparation (e.g. asymmetric synthesis) and separation (e.g. fractional crystallisation and chromatographic means) of such isomeric forms are either known in the art or are readily obtained by adapting the methods taught herein, or known methods, in a known manner.

## **Biological Activity**

### In vitro cell proliferation assays

Generally, the cytotoxic or cytostatic activity of an antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) is measured by: exposing mammalian cells having receptor proteins to the antibody of the ADC in a cell culture medium; culturing the cells for a period from about 6 hours to about 5 days; and measuring cell viability. Cell-based *in vitro* assays are used to measure viability (proliferation), cytotoxicity, and induction of apoptosis (caspase activation) of an ADC of the invention.

10 The *in vitro* potency of antibody-drug conjugates can be measured by a cell proliferation assay. The CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Luminescent Cell Viability Assay is a commercially available (Promega Corp., Madison, WI), homogeneous assay method based on the recombinant expression of *Coleoptera* luciferase (US Patent Nos. 5583024; 5674713 and 5700670). This cell proliferation assay determines the number of viable cells in culture based on quantitation  
15 of the ATP present, an indicator of metabolically active cells (Crouch *et al* (1993) *J. Immunol. Meth.* 160:81-88; US 6602677). The CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Assay is conducted in 96 well format, making it amenable to automated high-throughput screening (HTS) (Cree *et al* (1995) *AntiCancer Drugs* 6:398-404). The homogeneous assay procedure involves adding the single reagent (CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Reagent) directly to cells cultured in serum-supplemented  
20 medium. Cell washing, removal of medium and multiple pipetting steps are not required. The system detects as few as 15 cells/well in a 384-well format in 10 minutes after adding reagent and mixing. The cells may be treated continuously with ADC, or they may be treated and separated from ADC. Generally, cells treated briefly, i.e. 3 hours, showed the same potency effects as continuously treated cells.

25 The homogeneous "add-mix-measure" format results in cell lysis and generation of a luminescent signal proportional to the amount of ATP present. The amount of ATP is directly proportional to the number of cells present in culture. The CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Assay generates a "glow-type" luminescent signal, produced by the luciferase reaction, which has a half-life  
30 generally greater than five hours, depending on cell type and medium used. Viable cells are reflected in relative luminescence units (RLU). The substrate, Beetle Luciferin, is oxidatively decarboxylated by recombinant firefly luciferase with concomitant conversion of ATP to AMP and generation of photons.

35 The *in vitro* potency of antibody-drug conjugates can also be measured by a cytotoxicity assay. Cultured adherent cells are washed with PBS, detached with trypsin, diluted in



complete medium, containing 10% FCS, centrifuged, re-suspended in fresh medium and counted with a haemocytometer. Suspension cultures are counted directly. Monodisperse cell suspensions suitable for counting may require agitation of the suspension by repeated aspiration to break up cell clumps.

5

The cell suspension is diluted to the desired seeding density and dispensed (100µl per well) into black 96 well plates. Plates of adherent cell lines are incubated overnight to allow adherence. Suspension cell cultures can be used on the day of seeding.

A stock solution (1ml) of ADC (20µg/ml) is made in the appropriate cell culture medium.

10

Serial 10-fold dilutions of stock ADC are made in 15ml centrifuge tubes by serially transferring 100µl to 900µl of cell culture medium.

Four replicate wells of each ADC dilution (100µl) are dispensed in 96-well black plates, previously plated with cell suspension (100µl), resulting in a final volume of 200 µl. Control wells receive cell culture medium (100µl).

15

If the doubling time of the cell line is greater than 30 hours, ADC incubation is for 5 days, otherwise a four day incubation is done.

At the end of the incubation period, cell viability is assessed with the Alamar blue assay. AlamarBlue (Invitrogen) is dispensed over the whole plate (20µl per well) and incubated for 4 hours. Alamar blue fluorescence is measured at excitation 570nm, emission 585nm on the Varioskan flash plate reader. Percentage cell survival is calculated from the mean fluorescence in the ADC treated wells compared to the mean fluorescence in the control wells.

20

### ***Use***

25

The conjugates of the invention may be used to provide a PBD compound at a target location.

The target location is preferably a proliferative cell population. The antibody is an antibody for an antigen present on a proliferative cell population.

30

In one embodiment the antigen is absent or present at a reduced level in a non-proliferative cell population compared to the amount of antigen present in the proliferative cell population, for example a tumour cell population.

At the target location the linker may be cleaved so as to release a compound RelA, RelB, RelC, RelD or RelE. Thus, the conjugate may be used to selectively provide a compound RelA, RelB, Rel C, RelD or RelE to the target location.

5

The linker may be cleaved by an enzyme present at the target location.

The target location may be *in vitro*, *in vivo* or *ex vivo*.

10 The antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) compounds of the invention include those with utility for anticancer activity. In particular, the compounds include an antibody conjugated, i.e. covalently attached by a linker, to a PBD drug moiety, i.e. toxin. When the drug is not conjugated to an antibody, the PBD drug has a cytotoxic effect. The biological activity of the PBD drug moiety is thus modulated by conjugation to an antibody. The antibody-drug  
15 conjugates (ADC) of the invention selectively deliver an effective dose of a cytotoxic agent to tumor tissue whereby greater selectivity, i.e. a lower efficacious dose, may be achieved.

Thus, in one aspect, the present invention provides a conjugate compound as described herein for use in therapy.

20

In a further aspect there is also provides a conjugate compound as described herein for use in the treatment of a proliferative disease. A second aspect of the present invention provides the use of a conjugate compound in the manufacture of a medicament for treating a proliferative disease.

25

One of ordinary skill in the art is readily able to determine whether or not a candidate conjugate treats a proliferative condition for any particular cell type. For example, assays which may conveniently be used to assess the activity offered by a particular compound are described in the examples below.

30

The term "proliferative disease" pertains to an unwanted or uncontrolled cellular proliferation of excessive or abnormal cells which is undesired, such as, neoplastic or hyperplastic growth, whether *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

35 Examples of proliferative conditions include, but are not limited to, benign, pre-malignant, and malignant cellular proliferation, including but not limited to, neoplasms and tumours (e.g.

histocytoma, glioma, astrocyoma, osteoma), cancers (e.g. lung cancer, small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, bowel cancer, colon cancer, breast carcinoma, ovarian carcinoma, prostate cancer, testicular cancer, liver cancer, kidney cancer, bladder cancer, pancreas cancer, brain cancer, sarcoma, osteosarcoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, melanoma),  
5 lymphomas, leukemias, psoriasis, bone diseases, fibroproliferative disorders (e.g. of connective tissues), and atherosclerosis. Cancers of particular interest include, but are not limited to, leukemias and ovarian cancers.

Any type of cell may be treated, including but not limited to, lung, gastrointestinal (including,  
10 e.g. bowel, colon), breast (mammary), ovarian, prostate, liver (hepatic), kidney (renal), bladder, pancreas, brain, and skin.

Disorders of particular interest include, but are not limited to, non-Hodgkin Lymphoma including diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), follicular lymphoma, (FL), Mantle Cell  
15 lymphoma (MCL), chronic lymphatic lymphoma (CLL) and leukemias such as Hairy cell leukemia (HCL), Hairy cell leukemia variant (HCL-v) and Acute Lymphoblastic Leukaemia (ALL).

It is contemplated that the antibody-drug conjugates (ADC) of the present invention may be  
20 used to treat various diseases or disorders, e.g. characterized by the overexpression of a tumor antigen. Exemplary conditions or hyperproliferative disorders include benign or malignant tumors; leukemia, haematological, and lymphoid malignancies. Others include neuronal, glial, astrocytal, hypothalamic, glandular, macrophagal, epithelial, stromal, blastocoelic, inflammatory, angiogenic and immunologic, including autoimmune, disorders.

25 Generally, the disease or disorder to be treated is a hyperproliferative disease such as cancer. Examples of cancer to be treated herein include, but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia or lymphoid malignancies. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer (e.g. epithelial squamous cell  
30 cancer), lung cancer including small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung and squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastric or stomach cancer including gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, rectal cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial  
35 or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney or renal cancer, prostate cancer,

vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma, anal carcinoma, penile carcinoma, as well as head and neck cancer.

Autoimmune diseases for which the ADC compounds may be used in treatment include  
5 rheumatologic disorders (such as, for example, rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren's syndrome, scleroderma, lupus such as SLE and lupus nephritis, polymyositis/dermatomyositis, cryoglobulinemia, anti-phospholipid antibody syndrome, and psoriatic arthritis), osteoarthritis, autoimmune gastrointestinal and liver disorders (such as, for example, inflammatory bowel  
10 diseases (e.g. ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), autoimmune gastritis and pernicious anemia, autoimmune hepatitis, primary biliary cirrhosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, and celiac disease), vasculitis (such as, for example, ANCA-associated vasculitis, including Churg-Strauss vasculitis, Wegener's granulomatosis, and polyarteriitis), autoimmune neurological disorders (such as, for example, multiple sclerosis, opsoclonus myoclonus  
15 syndrome, myasthenia gravis, neuromyelitis optica, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and autoimmune polyneuropathies), renal disorders (such as, for example, glomerulonephritis, Goodpasture's syndrome, and Berger's disease), autoimmune dermatologic disorders (such as, for example, psoriasis, urticaria, hives, pemphigus vulgaris, bullous pemphigoid, and cutaneous lupus erythematosus), hematologic disorders (such as, for example, thrombocytopenic purpura, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, post-  
20 transfusion purpura, and autoimmune hemolytic anemia), atherosclerosis, uveitis, autoimmune hearing diseases (such as, for example, inner ear disease and hearing loss), Behcet's disease, Raynaud's syndrome, organ transplant, and autoimmune endocrine disorders (such as, for example, diabetic-related autoimmune diseases such as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), Addison's disease, and autoimmune thyroid disease  
25 (e.g. Graves' disease and thyroiditis)). More preferred such diseases include, for example, rheumatoid arthritis, ulcerative colitis, ANCA-associated vasculitis, lupus, multiple sclerosis, Sjögren's syndrome, Graves' disease, IDDM, pernicious anemia, thyroiditis, and glomerulonephritis.

### 30 ***Methods of Treatment***

The conjugates of the present invention may be used in a method of therapy. Also provided is a method of treatment, comprising administering to a subject in need of treatment a therapeutically-effective amount of a conjugate compound of the invention. The term  
"therapeutically effective amount" is an amount sufficient to show benefit to a patient. Such  
35 benefit may be at least amelioration of at least one symptom. The actual amount administered, and rate and time-course of administration, will depend on the nature and

severity of what is being treated. Prescription of treatment, e.g. decisions on dosage, is within the responsibility of general practitioners and other medical doctors.

A compound of the invention may be administered alone or in combination with other treatments, either simultaneously or sequentially dependent upon the condition to be treated. Examples of treatments and therapies include, but are not limited to, chemotherapy (the administration of active agents, including, e.g. drugs, such as chemotherapeutics); surgery; and radiation therapy.

A “chemotherapeutic agent” is a chemical compound useful in the treatment of cancer, regardless of mechanism of action. Classes of chemotherapeutic agents include, but are not limited to: alkylating agents, antimetabolites, spindle poison plant alkaloids, cytotoxic/antitumor antibiotics, topoisomerase inhibitors, antibodies, photosensitizers, and kinase inhibitors. Chemotherapeutic agents include compounds used in “targeted therapy” and conventional chemotherapy.

Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include: erlotinib (TARCEVA®, Genentech/OSI Pharm.), docetaxel (TAXOTERE®, Sanofi-Aventis), 5-FU (fluorouracil, 5-fluorouracil, CAS No. 51-21-8), gemcitabine (GEMZAR®, Lilly), PD-0325901 (CAS No. 391210-10-9, Pfizer), cisplatin (cis-diamine, dichloroplatinum(II), CAS No. 15663-27-1), carboplatin (CAS No. 41575-94-4), paclitaxel (TAXOL®, Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.), trastuzumab (HERCEPTIN®, Genentech), temozolomide (4-methyl-5-oxo-2,3,4,6,8-pentazabicyclo [4.3.0] nona-2,7,9-triene-9-carboxamide, CAS No. 85622-93-1, TEMODAR®, TEMODAL®, Schering Plough), tamoxifen ((Z)-2-[4-(1,2-diphenylbut-1-enyl)phenoxy]-N,N-dimethylethanamine, NOLVADEX®, ISTUBAL®, VALODEX®), and doxorubicin (ADRIAMYCIN®), Akti-1/2, HPPD, and rapamycin.

More examples of chemotherapeutic agents include: oxaliplatin (ELOXATIN®, Sanofi), bortezomib (VELCADE®, Millennium Pharm.), sunitinib (SUNITINIB®, SU11248, Pfizer), letrozole (FEMARA®, Novartis), imatinib mesylate (GLEEVEC®, Novartis), XL-518 (Mek inhibitor, Exelixis, WO 2007/044515), ARRY-886 (Mek inhibitor, AZD6244, Array BioPharma, Astra Zeneca), SF-1126 (PI3K inhibitor, Semafore Pharmaceuticals), BEZ-235 (PI3K inhibitor, Novartis), XL-147 (PI3K inhibitor, Exelixis), PTK787/ZK 222584 (Novartis), fulvestrant (FASLODEX®, AstraZeneca), leucovorin (folinic acid), rapamycin (sirolimus, RAPAMUNE®, Wyeth), lapatinib (TYKERB®, GSK572016, Glaxo Smith Kline), lonafarnib (SARASAR™, SCH 66336, Schering Plough), sorafenib (NEXAVAR®, BAY43-9006, Bayer Labs), gefitinib (IRESSA®, AstraZeneca), irinotecan (CAMPTOSAR®, CPT-11, Pfizer),

tipifarnib (ZARNESTRA™, Johnson & Johnson), ABRAXANE™ (Cremophor-free), albumin-engineered nanoparticle formulations of paclitaxel (American Pharmaceutical Partners, Schaumburg, IL), vandetanib (rINN, ZD6474, ZACTIMA®, AstraZeneca), chlorambucil, AG1478, AG1571 (SU 5271; Sugen), temsirolimus (TORISEL®, Wyeth), pazopanib  
5 (GlaxoSmithKline), canfosamide (TELCYTA®, Telik), thiotepa and cyclophosphamide (CYTOXAN®, NEOSAR®); alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, triethylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphoramide and trimethylmelamine; acetogenins (especially bullatacin and bullatacinone); a camptothecin (including the synthetic analog topotecan); bryostatin;  
10 callystatin; CC-1065 (including its adozelesin, carzelesin and bizelesin synthetic analogs); cryptophycins (particularly cryptophycin 1 and cryptophycin 8); dolastatin; duocarmycin (including the synthetic analogs, KW-2189 and CB1-TM1); eleutherobin; pancratistatin; a sarcodictyin; spongistatin; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine,  
15 chlorophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosoureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, and ranimustine; antibiotics such as the enediyne antibiotics (e.g. calicheamicin, calicheamicin gamma11, calicheamicin omegal1 (*Angew Chem. Intl. Ed. Engl.* (1994)  
20 33:183-186); dynemicin, dynemicin A; bisphosphonates, such as clodronate; an esperamicin; as well as neocarzinostatin chromophore and related chromoprotein enediyne antibiotic chromophores), aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, carabycin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycinis, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, morpholino-doxorubicin,  
25 cyanomorpholino-doxorubicin, 2-pyrrolino-doxorubicin and deoxydoxorubicin), epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, nemorubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins such as mitomycin C, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, porfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogs  
30 such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiothane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane,  
35 trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; eniluracil; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate;

defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; an epothilone; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidainine; maytansinoids such as maytansine and ansamitocins; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidanmol; nitraerine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; losoxantrone; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; 5 procarbazine; PSK® polysaccharide complex (JHS Natural Products, Eugene, OR); razoxane; rhizoxin; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; trichothecenes (especially T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A and anguidine); urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; 6-thioguanine; 10 mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine (NAVELBINE®); novantrone; teniposide; edatrexate; daunomycin; aminopterin; capecitabine (XELODA®, Roche); ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoids such as retinoic acid; and pharmaceutically 15 acceptable salts, acids and derivatives of any of the above.

Also included in the definition of "chemotherapeutic agent" are: (i) anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens and selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), including, for example, tamoxifen (including 20 NOLVADEX®; tamoxifen citrate), raloxifene, droloxifene, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and FARESTON® (toremifine citrate); (ii) aromatase inhibitors that inhibit the enzyme aromatase, which regulates estrogen production in the adrenal glands, such as, for example, 4(5)-imidazoles, aminoglutethimide, MEGASE® (megestrol acetate), AROMASIN® (exemestane; Pfizer), formestanie, fadrozole, RIVISOR® 25 (vorozole), FEMARA® (letrozole; Novartis), and ARIMIDEX® (anastrozole; AstraZeneca); (iii) anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; as well as troxacitabine (a 1,3-dioxolane nucleoside cytosine analog); (iv) protein kinase inhibitors such as MEK inhibitors (WO 2007/044515); (v) lipid kinase inhibitors; (vi) antisense oligonucleotides, particularly those which inhibit expression of genes in signaling pathways 30 implicated in aberrant cell proliferation, for example, PKC-alpha, Raf and H-Ras, such as oblimersen (GENASENSE®, Genta Inc.); (vii) ribozymes such as VEGF expression inhibitors (e.g., ANGIOZYME®) and HER2 expression inhibitors; (viii) vaccines such as gene therapy vaccines, for example, ALLOVECTIN®, LEUVECTIN®, and VAXID®; PROLEUKIN® rIL-2; topoisomerase 1 inhibitors such as LURTOTECAN®; ABARELIX® rmRH; (ix) anti- 35 angiogenic agents such as bevacizumab (AVASTIN®, Genentech); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids and derivatives of any of the above.

Also included in the definition of “chemotherapeutic agent” are therapeutic antibodies such as alemtuzumab (Campath), bevacizumab (AVASTIN®, Genentech); cetuximab (ERBITUX®, Imclone); panitumumab (VECTIBIX®, Amgen), rituximab (RITUXAN®, Genentech/Biogen Idec), ofatumumab (ARZERRA®, GSK), pertuzumab (PERJETA™, OMNITARG™, 2C4, Genentech), trastuzumab (HERCEPTIN®, Genentech), tositumomab (Bexxar, Corixia), and the antibody drug conjugate, gemtuzumab ozogamicin (MYLOTARG®, Wyeth).

Humanized monoclonal antibodies with therapeutic potential as chemotherapeutic agents in combination with the conjugates of the invention include: alemtuzumab, apolizumab, aselizumab, atlizumab, bapineuzumab, bevacizumab, bivatuzumab mertansine, cantuzumab mertansine, cedelizumab, certolizumab pegol, cidfusituzumab, cidtuzumab, daclizumab, eculizumab, efalizumab, epratuzumab, erlizumab, felvizumab, fontolizumab, gemtuzumab ozogamicin, inotuzumab ozogamicin, ipilimumab, labetuzumab, lintuzumab, matuzumab, mepolizumab, motavizumab, motovizumab, natalizumab, nimotuzumab, nolovizumab, numavizumab, ocrelizumab, omalizumab, palivizumab, pascolizumab, pectusituzumab, pectuzumab, pertuzumab, pexelizumab, ralivizumab, ranibizumab, reslivizumab, reslizumab, resyvizumab, rovelizumab, ruplizumab, sibrotuzumab, siplizumab, sontuzumab, tacatuzumab tetraxetan, tadocizumab, talizumab, tefibazumab, tocilizumab, toralizumab, trastuzumab, tucotuzumab celmoleukin, tucusituzumab, umavizumab, urtoxazumab, and visilizumab.

Pharmaceutical compositions according to the present invention, and for use in accordance with the present invention, may comprise, in addition to the active ingredient, i.e. a conjugate compound, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier, buffer, stabiliser or other materials well known to those skilled in the art. Such materials should be non-toxic and should not interfere with the efficacy of the active ingredient. The precise nature of the carrier or other material will depend on the route of administration, which may be oral, or by injection, e.g. cutaneous, subcutaneous, or intravenous.

Pharmaceutical compositions for oral administration may be in tablet, capsule, powder or liquid form. A tablet may comprise a solid carrier or an adjuvant. Liquid pharmaceutical compositions generally comprise a liquid carrier such as water, petroleum, animal or vegetable oils, mineral oil or synthetic oil. Physiological saline solution, dextrose or other saccharide solution or glycols such as ethylene glycol, propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol may be included. A capsule may comprise a solid carrier such a gelatin.



For intravenous, cutaneous or subcutaneous injection, or injection at the site of affliction, the active ingredient will be in the form of a parenterally acceptable aqueous solution which is pyrogen-free and has suitable pH, isotonicity and stability. Those of relevant skill in the art are well able to prepare suitable solutions using, for example, isotonic vehicles such as Sodium Chloride Injection, Ringer's Injection, Lactated Ringer's Injection. Preservatives, stabilisers, buffers, antioxidants and/or other additives may be included, as required.

### **Formulations**

While it is possible for the conjugate compound to be used (e.g., administered) alone, it is often preferable to present it as a composition or formulation.

In one embodiment, the composition is a pharmaceutical composition (e.g., formulation, preparation, medicament) comprising a conjugate compound, as described herein, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, diluent, or excipient.

In one embodiment, the composition is a pharmaceutical composition comprising at least one conjugate compound, as described herein, together with one or more other pharmaceutically acceptable ingredients well known to those skilled in the art, including, but not limited to, pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, diluents, excipients, adjuvants, fillers, buffers, preservatives, anti-oxidants, lubricants, stabilisers, solubilisers, surfactants (e.g., wetting agents), masking agents, colouring agents, flavouring agents, and sweetening agents.

In one embodiment, the composition further comprises other active agents, for example, other therapeutic or prophylactic agents.

Suitable carriers, diluents, excipients, etc. can be found in standard pharmaceutical texts. See, for example, Handbook of Pharmaceutical Additives, 2nd Edition (eds. M. Ash and I. Ash), 2001 (Synapse Information Resources, Inc., Endicott, New York, USA), Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 20th edition, pub. Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2000; and Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients, 2nd edition, 1994.

Another aspect of the present invention pertains to methods of making a pharmaceutical composition comprising admixing at least one [<sup>11</sup>C]-radiolabelled conjugate or conjugate-like compound, as defined herein, together with one or more other pharmaceutically acceptable

ingredients well known to those skilled in the art, e.g., carriers, diluents, excipients, etc. If formulated as discrete units (e.g., tablets, etc.), each unit contains a predetermined amount (dosage) of the active compound.

- 5 The term “pharmaceutically acceptable,” as used herein, pertains to compounds, ingredients, materials, compositions, dosage forms, etc., which are, within the scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in contact with the tissues of the subject in question (e.g., human) without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic response, or other problem or complication, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio. Each carrier, diluent, excipient, etc. must also be “acceptable” in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation.

The formulations may be prepared by any methods well known in the art of pharmacy. Such methods include the step of bringing into association the active compound with a carrier which constitutes one or more accessory ingredients. In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active compound with carriers (e.g., liquid carriers, finely divided solid carrier, etc.), and then shaping the product, if necessary.

- 20 The formulation may be prepared to provide for rapid or slow release; immediate, delayed, timed, or sustained release; or a combination thereof.

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration (e.g., by injection), include aqueous or non-aqueous, isotonic, pyrogen-free, sterile liquids (e.g., solutions, suspensions), in which the active ingredient is dissolved, suspended, or otherwise provided (e.g., in a liposome or other microparticulate). Such liquids may additionally contain other pharmaceutically acceptable ingredients, such as anti-oxidants, buffers, preservatives, stabilisers, bacteriostats, suspending agents, thickening agents, and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood (or other relevant bodily fluid) of the intended recipient.

30 Examples of excipients include, for example, water, alcohols, polyols, glycerol, vegetable oils, and the like. Examples of suitable isotonic carriers for use in such formulations include Sodium Chloride Injection, Ringer's Solution, or Lactated Ringer's Injection. Typically, the concentration of the active ingredient in the liquid is from about 1 ng/ml to about 10 µg/ml, for example from about 10 ng/ml to about 1 µg/ml. The formulations may be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose sealed containers, for example, ampoules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilised) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid

carrier, for example water for injections, immediately prior to use. Extemporaneous injection solutions and suspensions may be prepared from sterile powders, granules, and tablets.

### ***Dosage***

5 It will be appreciated by one of skill in the art that appropriate dosages of the conjugate compound, and compositions comprising the conjugate compound, can vary from patient to patient. Determining the optimal dosage will generally involve the balancing of the level of therapeutic benefit against any risk or deleterious side effects. The selected dosage level will depend on a variety of factors including, but not limited to, the activity of the particular  
10 compound, the route of administration, the time of administration, the rate of excretion of the compound, the duration of the treatment, other drugs, compounds, and/or materials used in combination, the severity of the condition, and the species, sex, age, weight, condition, general health, and prior medical history of the patient. The amount of compound and route of administration will ultimately be at the discretion of the physician, veterinarian, or clinician,  
15 although generally the dosage will be selected to achieve local concentrations at the site of action which achieve the desired effect without causing substantial harmful or deleterious side-effects.

Administration can be effected in one dose, continuously or intermittently (e.g., in divided  
20 doses at appropriate intervals) throughout the course of treatment. Methods of determining the most effective means and dosage of administration are well known to those of skill in the art and will vary with the formulation used for therapy, the purpose of the therapy, the target cell(s) being treated, and the subject being treated. Single or multiple administrations can be carried out with the dose level and pattern being selected by the treating physician,  
25 veterinarian, or clinician.

In general, a suitable dose of the active compound is in the range of about 100 ng to about 25 mg (more typically about 1  $\mu$ g to about 10 mg) per kilogram body weight of the subject per day. Where the active compound is a salt, an ester, an amide, a prodrug, or the like, the  
30 amount administered is calculated on the basis of the parent compound and so the actual weight to be used is increased proportionately.

In one embodiment, the active compound is administered to a human patient according to the following dosage regime: about 100 mg, 3 times daily.

35

In one embodiment, the active compound is administered to a human patient according to the following dosage regime: about 150 mg, 2 times daily.

5 In one embodiment, the active compound is administered to a human patient according to the following dosage regime: about 200 mg, 2 times daily.

However in one embodiment, the conjugate compound is administered to a human patient according to the following dosage regime: about 50 or about 75 mg, 3 or 4 times daily.

10 In one embodiment, the conjugate compound is administered to a human patient according to the following dosage regime: about 100 or about 125 mg, 2 times daily.

The dosage amounts described above may apply to the conjugate (including the PBD moiety and the linker to the antibody) or to the effective amount of PBD compound provided, for  
15 example the amount of compound that is releasable after cleavage of the linker.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of an ADC of the invention will depend on the type of disease to be treated, as defined above, the severity and course of the disease, whether the molecule is administered for preventive or  
20 therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The molecule is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1  $\mu$ g/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1-20 mg/kg) of molecule is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or  
25 more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1  $\mu$ g/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. An exemplary dosage of ADC to be administered to a patient is in the range of about 0.1 to about 10 mg/kg of patient weight. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease  
30 symptoms occurs. An exemplary dosing regimen comprises a course of administering an initial loading dose of about 4 mg/kg, followed by additional doses every week, two weeks, or three weeks of an ADC. Other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

***Treatment***

The term "treatment," as used herein in the context of treating a condition, pertains generally to treatment and therapy, whether of a human or an animal (e.g., in veterinary applications), in which some desired therapeutic effect is achieved, for example, the inhibition of the  
5 progress of the condition, and includes a reduction in the rate of progress, a halt in the rate of progress, regression of the condition, amelioration of the condition, and cure of the condition. Treatment as a prophylactic measure (i.e., prophylaxis, prevention) is also included.

10 The term "therapeutically-effective amount," as used herein, pertains to that amount of an active compound, or a material, composition or dosage from comprising an active compound, which is effective for producing some desired therapeutic effect, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, when administered in accordance with a desired treatment regimen.

15 Similarly, the term "prophylactically-effective amount," as used herein, pertains to that amount of an active compound, or a material, composition or dosage from comprising an active compound, which is effective for producing some desired prophylactic effect, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, when administered in accordance with a  
20 desired treatment regimen.

***Preparation of Drug conjugates***

Antibody drug conjugates may be prepared by several routes, employing organic chemistry reactions, conditions, and reagents known to those skilled in the art, including reaction of a  
25 nucleophilic group of an antibody with a drug-linker reagent. This method may be employed to prepare the antibody-drug conjugates of the invention.

Nucleophilic groups on antibodies include, but are not limited to side chain thiol groups, e.g. cysteine. Thiol groups are nucleophilic and capable of reacting to form covalent bonds with  
30 electrophilic groups on linker moieties such as those of the present invention. Certain antibodies have reducible interchain disulfides, i.e. cysteine bridges. Antibodies may be made reactive for conjugation with linker reagents by treatment with a reducing agent such as DTT (Cleland's reagent, dithiothreitol) or TCEP (tris(2-carboxyethyl)phosphine hydrochloride; Getz et al (1999) Anal. Biochem. Vol 273:73-80; Soltec Ventures, Beverly,  
35 MA). Each cysteine disulfide bridge will thus form, theoretically, two reactive thiol nucleophiles. Additional nucleophilic groups can be introduced into antibodies through the

reaction of lysines with 2-iminothiolane (Traut's reagent) resulting in conversion of an amine into a thiol.

***The Subject/Patient***

5 The subject/patient may be an animal, mammal, a placental mammal, a marsupial  
(e.g., kangaroo, wombat), a monotreme (e.g., duckbilled platypus), a rodent (e.g., a guinea  
pig, a hamster, a rat, a mouse), murine (e.g., a mouse), a lagomorph (e.g., a rabbit), avian  
(e.g., a bird), canine (e.g., a dog), feline (e.g., a cat), equine (e.g., a horse), porcine (e.g., a  
10 pig), ovine (e.g., a sheep), bovine (e.g., a cow), a primate, simian (e.g., a monkey or ape), a  
monkey (e.g., marmoset, baboon), an ape (e.g., gorilla, chimpanzee, orangutang, gibbon), or  
a human.

Furthermore, the subject/patient may be any of its forms of development, for example, a  
foetus. In one preferred embodiment, the subject/patient is a human.

15

**Further Preferences**

The following preferences may apply to all aspects of the invention as described above, or may relate to a single aspect. The preferences may be combined together in any combination.

5

In some embodiments,  $R^{6'}$ ,  $R^{7'}$ ,  $R^{9'}$ , and  $Y'$  are preferably the same as  $R^6$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^9$ , and  $Y$  respectively.

*Dimer link*10  $Y$  and  $Y'$  are preferably O.

$R''$  is preferably a  $C_{3-7}$  alkylene group with no substituents. More preferably  $R''$  is a  $C_3$ ,  $C_5$  or  $C_7$  alkylene. Most preferably,  $R''$  is a  $C_3$  or  $C_5$  alkylene.

15  $R^6$  to  $R^9$ 

$R^9$  is preferably H.

$R^6$  is preferably selected from H, OH, OR, SH,  $NH_2$ , nitro and halo, and is more preferably H or halo, and most preferably is H.

20

$R^7$  is preferably selected from H, OH, OR, SH, SR,  $NH_2$ , NHR,  $NRR'$ , and halo, and more preferably independently selected from H, OH and OR, where R is preferably selected from optionally substituted  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl,  $C_{3-10}$  heterocyclyl and  $C_{5-10}$  aryl groups. R may be more preferably a  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl group, which may or may not be substituted. A substituent of interest is a  $C_{5-6}$  aryl group (e.g. phenyl). Particularly preferred substituents at the 7- positions are OMe and  $OCH_2Ph$ . Other substituents of particular interest are dimethylamino (i.e.  $-NMe_2$ );  $-(OC_2H_4)_qOMe$ , where q is from 0 to 2; nitrogen-containing  $C_6$  heterocyclyls, including morpholino, piperidinyl and N-methyl-piperazinyl.

25

30 These preferences apply to  $R^{9'}$ ,  $R^{6'}$  and  $R^{7'}$  respectively. $R^{12}$ 

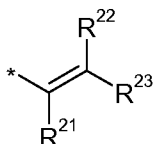
When there is a double bond present between  $C2'$  and  $C3'$ ,  $R^{12}$  is selected from:

(a)  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group, optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group comprising: halo, nitro, cyano, ether,  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl,  $C_{3-7}$  heterocyclyl and bis-oxy- $C_{1-3}$  alkylene;

35

(b) C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl;

(c) C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl;



(d) , wherein each of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 5;

5

(e) , wherein one of R<sup>25a</sup> and R<sup>25b</sup> is H and the other is selected from: phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; and

(f) , where R<sup>24</sup> is selected from: H; C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl; C<sub>2-3</sub>

10 alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl.

When R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, it may be a C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl group. A C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl group may be a phenyl group or a C<sub>5-7</sub> heteroaryl group, for example furanyl, thiophenyl and pyridyl. In some  
 15 embodiments, R<sup>12</sup> is preferably phenyl. In other embodiments, R<sup>12</sup> is preferably thiophenyl, for example, thiophen-2-yl and thiophen-3-yl.

When R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, it may be a C<sub>8-10</sub> aryl, for example a quinolinyl or isoquinolinyl group. The quinolinyl or isoquinolinyl group may be bound to the PBD core through any  
 20 available ring position. For example, the quinolinyl may be quinolin-2-yl, quinolin-3-yl, quinolin-4yl, quinolin-5-yl, quinolin-6-yl, quinolin-7-yl and quinolin-8-yl. Of these quinolin-3-yl and quinolin-6-yl may be preferred. The isoquinolinyl may be isoquinolin-1-yl, isoquinolin-3-yl, isoquinolin-4yl, isoquinolin-5-yl, isoquinolin-6-yl, isoquinolin-7-yl and isoquinolin-8-yl. Of these isoquinolin-3-yl and isoquinolin-6-yl may be preferred.

25

When R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, it may bear any number of substituent groups. It preferably bears from 1 to 3 substituent groups, with 1 and 2 being more preferred, and singly substituted groups being most preferred. The substituents may be any position.



Where  $R^{12}$  is  $C_{5-7}$  aryl group, a single substituent is preferably on a ring atom that is not adjacent the bond to the remainder of the compound, i.e. it is preferably  $\beta$  or  $\gamma$  to the bond to the remainder of the compound. Therefore, where the  $C_{5-7}$  aryl group is phenyl, the substituent is preferably in the meta- or para- positions, and more preferably is in the para-  
5 position.

Where  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{8-10}$  aryl group, for example quinolinyl or isoquinolinyl, it may bear any number of substituents at any position of the quinoline or isoquinoline rings. In some embodiments, it bears one, two or three substituents, and these may be on either the  
10 proximal and distal rings or both (if more than one substituent).

*$R^{12}$  substituents, when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group*

If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is halo, it is preferably F or Cl, more preferably Cl.  
15

If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is ether, it may in some embodiments be an alkoxy group, for example, a  $C_{1-7}$  alkoxy group (e.g. methoxy, ethoxy) or it may in some embodiments be a  $C_{5-7}$  aryloxy group (e.g. phenoxy, pyridyloxy, furanyloxy). The alkoxy group may itself be further substituted, for example by an amino group (e.g.  
20 dimethylamino).

If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is  $C_{1-7}$  alkyl, it may preferably be a  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl group (e.g. methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl).

25 If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is  $C_{3-7}$  heterocyclyl, it may in some embodiments be  $C_6$  nitrogen containing heterocyclyl group, e.g. morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperidinyl, piperazinyl. These groups may be bound to the rest of the PBD moiety via the nitrogen atom. These groups may be further substituted, for example, by  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl groups. If the  $C_6$  nitrogen containing heterocyclyl group is piperazinyl, the said further substituent  
30 may be on the second nitrogen ring atom.

If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is bis-oxy- $C_{1-3}$  alkylene, this is preferably bis-oxy-methylene or bis-oxy-ethylene.

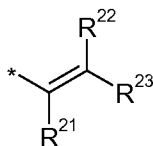
35 If a substituent on  $R^{12}$  when  $R^{12}$  is a  $C_{5-10}$  aryl group is ester, this is preferably methyl ester or ethyl ester.

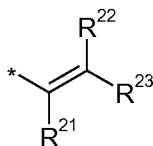
Particularly preferred substituents when R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group include methoxy, ethoxy, fluoro, chloro, cyano, bis-oxy-methylene, methyl-piperazinyl, morpholino and methyl-thiophenyl. Other particularly preferred substituent for R<sup>12</sup> are dimethylaminopropoxy and carboxy.

Particularly preferred substituted R<sup>12</sup> groups when R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group include, but are not limited to, 4-methoxy-phenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-ethoxy-phenyl, 3-ethoxy-phenyl, 4-fluoro-phenyl, 4-chloro-phenyl, 3,4-bisoxymethylene-phenyl, 4-methylthiophenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, 4-phenoxyphenyl, quinolin-3-yl and quinolin-6-yl, isoquinolin-3-yl and isoquinolin-6-yl, 2-thienyl, 2-furanyl, methoxynaphthyl, and naphthyl. Another possible substituted R<sup>12</sup> group is 4-nitrophenyl. R<sup>12</sup> groups of particular interest include 4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl and 3,4-bisoxymethylene-phenyl.

When R<sup>12</sup> is C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl, it may be methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl or pentyl. In some embodiments, it may be methyl, ethyl or propyl (n-pentyl or isopropyl). In some of these embodiments, it may be methyl. In other embodiments, it may be butyl or pentyl, which may be linear or branched.

When R<sup>12</sup> is C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl, it may be cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl or cyclohexyl. In some embodiments, it may be cyclopropyl.



When R<sup>12</sup> is , each of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 5. In some embodiments, the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 4 or no more than 3.

In some embodiments, one of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> is H, with the other two groups being selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

In other embodiments, two of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are H, with the other group being selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

In some embodiments, the groups that are not H are selected from methyl and ethyl. In some of these embodiments, the groups that are not H are methyl.

In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  is H.

5

In some embodiments,  $R^{22}$  is H.

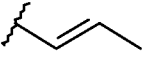
In some embodiments,  $R^{23}$  is H.

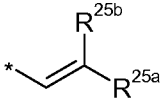
10 In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  and  $R^{22}$  are H.

In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  and  $R^{23}$  are H.

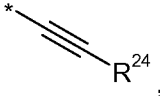
In some embodiments,  $R^{22}$  and  $R^{23}$  are H.

15

An  $R^{12}$  group of particular interest is: .

When  $R^{12}$  is , one of  $R^{25a}$  and  $R^{25b}$  is H and the other is selected from: phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl. In some embodiments, the group which is not H is optionally substituted phenyl. If the phenyl optional substituent is halo, it is preferably fluoro. In some embodiment, the phenyl group is unsubstituted.

20

When  $R^{12}$  is ,  $R^{24}$  is selected from: H;  $C_{1-3}$  saturated alkyl;  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl;  $C_{2-3}$

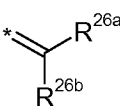
25

alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl. If the phenyl optional substituent is halo, it is preferably fluoro. In some embodiment, the phenyl group is unsubstituted.

In some embodiments,  $R^{24}$  is selected from H, methyl, ethyl, ethenyl and ethynyl. In some of these embodiments,  $R^{24}$  is selected from H and methyl.

30

When there is a single bond present between  $C2'$  and  $C3'$ ,

$R^{12}$  is , where  $R^{26a}$  and  $R^{26b}$  are independently selected from H, F,  $C_{1-4}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted by a group selected from  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl amido and  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl ester; or, when one of  $R^{26a}$  and  $R^{26b}$  is H, the other is selected from nitrile and a  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl ester.

5

In some embodiments, it is preferred that  $R^{26a}$  and  $R^{26b}$  are both H.

In other embodiments, it is preferred that  $R^{26a}$  and  $R^{26b}$  are both methyl.

10 In further embodiments, it is preferred that one of  $R^{26a}$  and  $R^{26b}$  is H, and the other is selected from  $C_{1-4}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted. In these further embodiment, it may be further preferred that the group which is not H is selected from methyl and ethyl.

15  $R^2$ 

The above preferences for  $R^{12}$  apply equally to  $R^2$ .

 $R^{22}$ 

In some embodiments,  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIa.

20

A in  $R^{22}$  when it is of formula IIa may be phenyl group or a  $C_{5-7}$  heteroaryl group, for example furanyl, thiophenyl and pyridyl. In some embodiments, A is preferably phenyl.

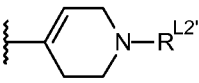
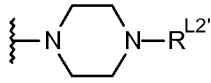
25  $Q^2-X$  may be on any of the available ring atoms of the  $C_{5-7}$  aryl group, but is preferably on a ring atom that is not adjacent the bond to the remainder of the compound, i.e. it is preferably  $\beta$  or  $\gamma$  to the bond to the remainder of the compound. Therefore, where the  $C_{5-7}$  aryl group (A) is phenyl, the substituent ( $Q^2-X$ ) is preferably in the meta- or para- positions, and more preferably is in the para- position.

30 In some embodiments,  $Q^1$  is a single bond. In these embodiments,  $Q^2$  is selected from a single bond and  $-Z-(CH_2)_n-$ , where Z is selected from a single bond, O, S and NH and is from 1 to 3. In some of these embodiments,  $Q^2$  is a single bond. In other embodiments,  $Q^2$  is  $-Z-(CH_2)_n-$ . In these embodiments, Z may be O or S and n may be 1 or n may be 2. In other of these embodiments, Z may be a single bond and n may be 1.

In other embodiments, Q<sup>1</sup> is -CH=CH-.

In other embodiments, R<sup>22</sup> is of formula IIb. In these embodiments, R<sup>C1</sup>, R<sup>C2</sup> and R<sup>C3</sup> are independently selected from H and unsubstituted C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl. In some preferred  
5 embodiments, R<sup>C1</sup>, R<sup>C2</sup> and R<sup>C3</sup> are all H. In other embodiments, R<sup>C1</sup>, R<sup>C2</sup> and R<sup>C3</sup> are all methyl. In certain embodiments, R<sup>C1</sup>, R<sup>C2</sup> and R<sup>C3</sup> are independently selected from H and methyl.

10 X is a group selected from the list comprising: O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO-R<sup>L2'</sup>, NH-C(=O)-

R<sup>L2'</sup>, NHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CONHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, , , NR<sup>N</sup>R<sup>L2'</sup>, wherein R<sup>N</sup>  
is selected from the group comprising H and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl. X may preferably be: OH, SH, CO<sub>2</sub>H, -N=C=O or NHR<sup>N</sup>, and may more preferably be: O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, -NH-C(=O)-R<sup>L2'</sup> or NH-R<sup>L2'</sup>. Particularly preferred groups include: O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup> and NH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, with NH-R<sup>L2'</sup> being  
15 the most preferred group.

In some embodiments R<sup>22</sup> is of formula IIc. In these embodiments, it is preferred that Q is NR<sup>N</sup>-R<sup>L2'</sup>. In other embodiments, Q is O-R<sup>L2'</sup>. In further embodiments, Q is S-R<sup>L2'</sup>. R<sup>N</sup> is preferably selected from H and methyl. In some embodiment, R<sup>N</sup> is H. In other  
20 embodiments, R<sup>N</sup> is methyl.

In some embodiments, R<sup>22</sup> may be -A-CH<sub>2</sub>-X and -A-X. In these embodiments, X may be O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO-R<sup>L2'</sup> and NH-R<sup>L2'</sup>. In particularly preferred embodiments, X may be NH-R<sup>L2'</sup>.

25

R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>11</sup>

In some embodiments, R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.

30 In some embodiments, R<sup>11</sup> is OH.

In some embodiments, R<sup>11</sup> is OMe.

In some embodiments,  $R^{11}$  is  $SO_zM$ , where  $z$  is 2 or 3 and  $M$  is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation.

$R^{11a}$

5 In some embodiments,  $R^{11a}$  is OH.

In some embodiments,  $R^{11a}$  is OMe.

10 In some embodiments,  $R^{11a}$  is  $SO_zM$ , where  $z$  is 2 or 3 and  $M$  is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation.

$R^{20}, R^{21}$

In some embodiments,  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.

15

In some embodiments  $R^{20}$  is H.

In some embodiments,  $R^{20}$  is  $R^C$ .

20 In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  is OH.

In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  is OMe.

25 In some embodiments,  $R^{21}$  is  $SO_zM$ , where  $z$  is 2 or 3 and  $M$  is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation.

$R^{30}, R^{31}$

In some embodiments,  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.

30

In some embodiments,  $R^{31}$  is OH.

In some embodiments,  $R^{31}$  is OMe.

35 In some embodiments,  $R^{31}$  is  $SO_zM$ , where  $z$  is 2 or 3 and  $M$  is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation.

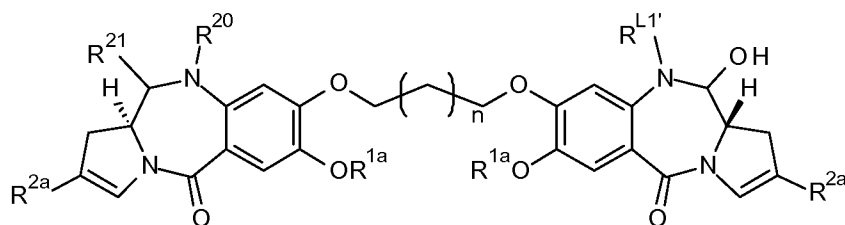
*M* and *z*

It is preferred that *M* is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation, and is more preferably  $\text{Na}^+$ .

5

*z* is preferably 3.

Preferred conjugates of the first aspect of the present invention may have a  $D^L$  of formula Ia:



Ia

10 where

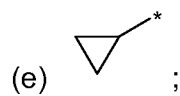
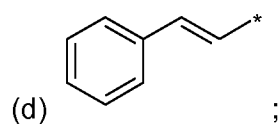
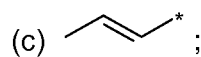
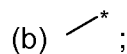
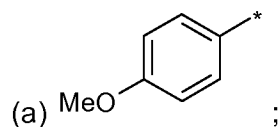
$R^{L1'}$ ,  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  are as defined above;

*n* is 1 or 3;

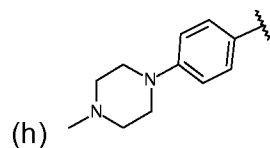
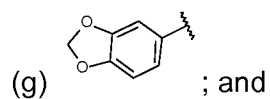
$R^{1a}$  is methyl or phenyl; and

$R^{2a}$  is selected from:

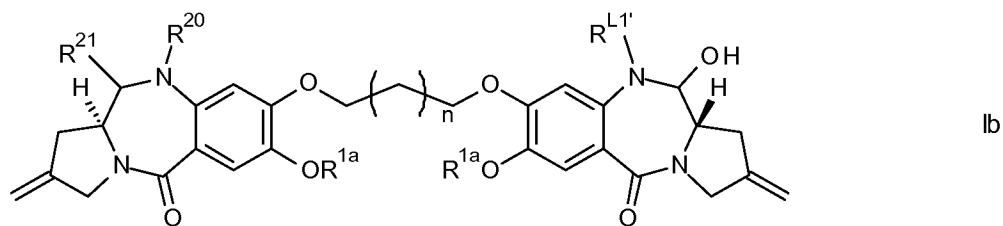
15



20



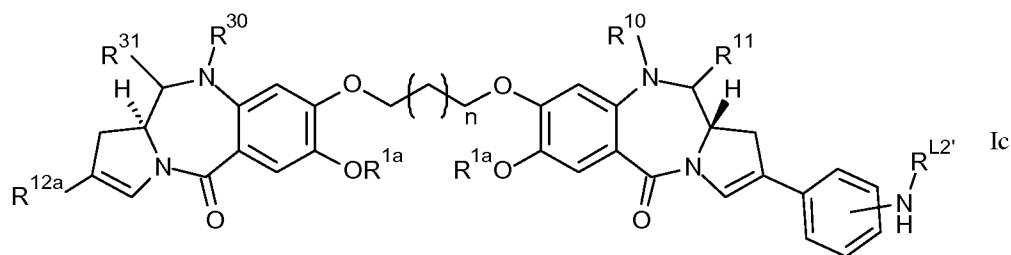
Preferred conjugates of the first aspect of the present invention may have a D<sup>L</sup> of formula Ib:



where

- 5 R<sup>L1'</sup>, R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> are as defined above;  
 n is 1 or 3; and  
 R<sup>1a</sup> is methyl or phenyl.

Preferred conjugates of the first aspect of the present invention may have a D<sup>L</sup> of formula Ic:

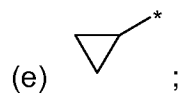
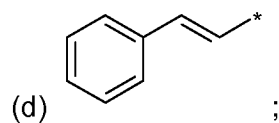
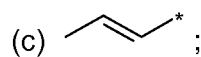
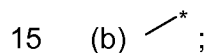
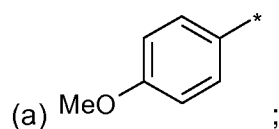


10

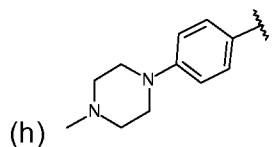
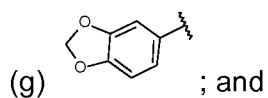
where R<sup>L2'</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined above

n is 1 or 3;

R<sup>12a</sup> is selected from:

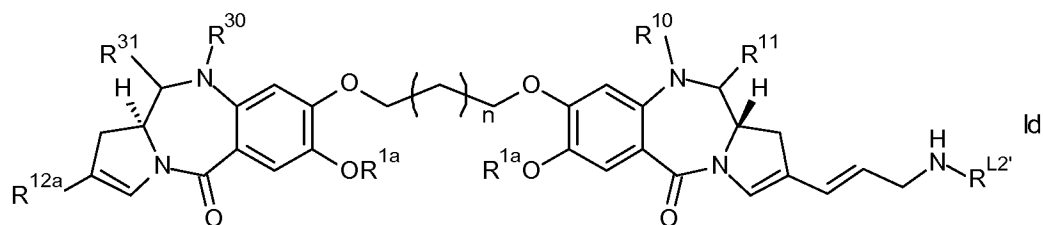






the amino group is at either the meta or para positions of the phenyl group.

5 Preferred conjugates of the first aspect of the present invention may have a D<sup>L</sup> of formula Id:

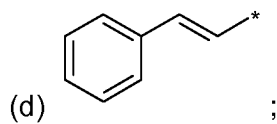
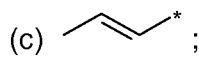
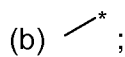
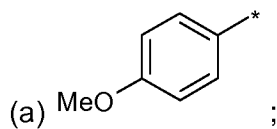


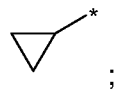
where R<sup>L2'</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined above

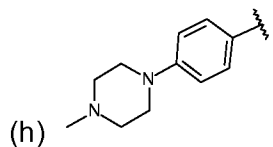
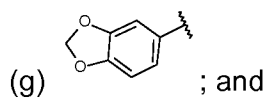
n is 1 or 3;

R<sup>1a</sup> is methyl or phenyl;

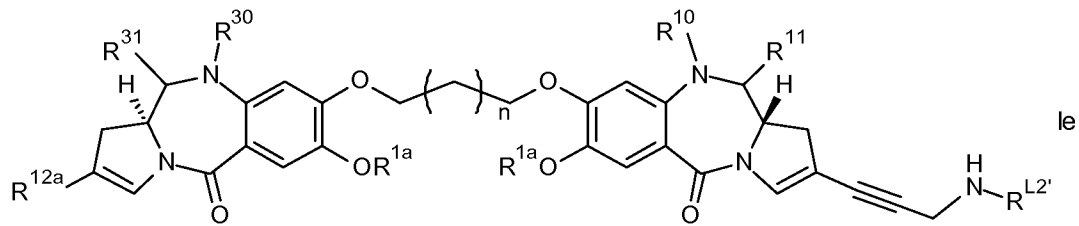
10 R<sup>12a</sup> is selected from:



15 (e)  ;



Preferred conjugates of the first aspect of the present invention may have a D<sup>L</sup> of formula Ie:

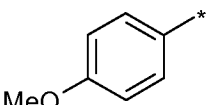

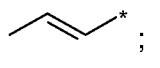
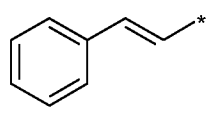
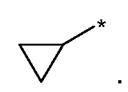

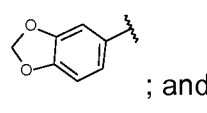
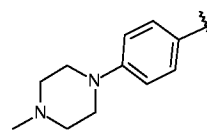


5 where R<sup>L2'</sup>, R<sup>10</sup>, R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are as defined above

n is 1 or 3;

R<sup>1a</sup> is methyl or phenyl;

R<sup>12a</sup> is selected from:

- (a)  ;
- 10 (b)  ;
- (c)  ;
- (d)  ;
- (e)  ;
- (f)  ;
- 15 (g)  ; and
- (h)  .

## Examples

### **General Experimental Methods**

Optical rotations were measured on an ADP 220 polarimeter (Bellingham Stanley Ltd.) and concentrations (*c*) are given in g/100mL. Melting points were measured using a digital  
5 melting point apparatus (Electrothermal). IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer Spectrum 1000 FT IR Spectrometer. <sup>1</sup>H and <sup>13</sup>C NMR spectra were acquired at 300 K using a Bruker Avance NMR spectrometer at 400 and 100 MHz, respectively. Chemical shifts are reported relative to TMS ( $\delta = 0.0$  ppm), and signals are designated as s (singlet), d  
10 (doublet), t (triplet), dt (double triplet), dd (doublet of doublets), ddd (double doublet of doublets) or m (multiplet), with coupling constants given in Hertz (Hz). Mass spectroscopy (MS) data were collected using a Waters Micromass ZQ instrument coupled to a Waters 2695 HPLC with a Waters 2996 PDA. Waters Micromass ZQ parameters used were: Capillary (kV), 3.38; Cone (V), 35; Extractor (V), 3.0; Source temperature ( $^{\circ}$ C), 100; Desolvation Temperature ( $^{\circ}$ C), 200; Cone flow rate (L/h), 50; De-solvation flow rate (L/h),  
15 250. High-resolution mass spectroscopy (HRMS) data were recorded on a Waters Micromass QTOF Global in positive W-mode using metal-coated borosilicate glass tips to introduce the samples into the instrument. Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC) was performed on silica gel aluminium plates (Merck 60, F<sub>254</sub>), and flash chromatography utilised silica gel (Merck 60, 230-400 mesh ASTM). Except for the HOBt (NovaBiochem) and solid-supported reagents (Argonaut), all other chemicals and solvents were purchased from  
20 Sigma-Aldrich and were used as supplied without further purification. Anhydrous solvents were prepared by distillation under a dry nitrogen atmosphere in the presence of an appropriate drying agent, and were stored over 4Å molecular sieves or sodium wire. Petroleum ether refers to the fraction boiling at 40-60 $^{\circ}$ C.

25

General LC/MS conditions:

*Method 1 (default method, used unless stated otherwise)*

The HPLC (Waters Alliance 2695) was run using a mobile phase of water (A) (formic acid 0.1%) and acetonitrile (B) (formic acid 0.1%). Gradient: initial composition 5% B held over  
30 1.0 min, then increase from 5% B to 95% B over a 3 min period. The composition was held for 0.1 min at 95% B, then returned to 5% B in 0.03 minutes and hold there for 0.87 min. Total gradient run time equals 5 minutes.

*Method 2*

35 The HPLC (Waters Alliance 2695) was run using a mobile phase of water (A) (formic acid 0.1%) and acetonitrile (B) (formic acid 0.1%). Gradient: initial composition 5% B held over

1.0 minute, then increase from 5% B to 95% B over a 2.5 minute period. The composition was held for 0.5 minutes at 95% B, then returned to 5% B in 0.1 minutes and hold there for 0.9 min. Total gradient run time equals 5 minutes.

5 *For both methods*

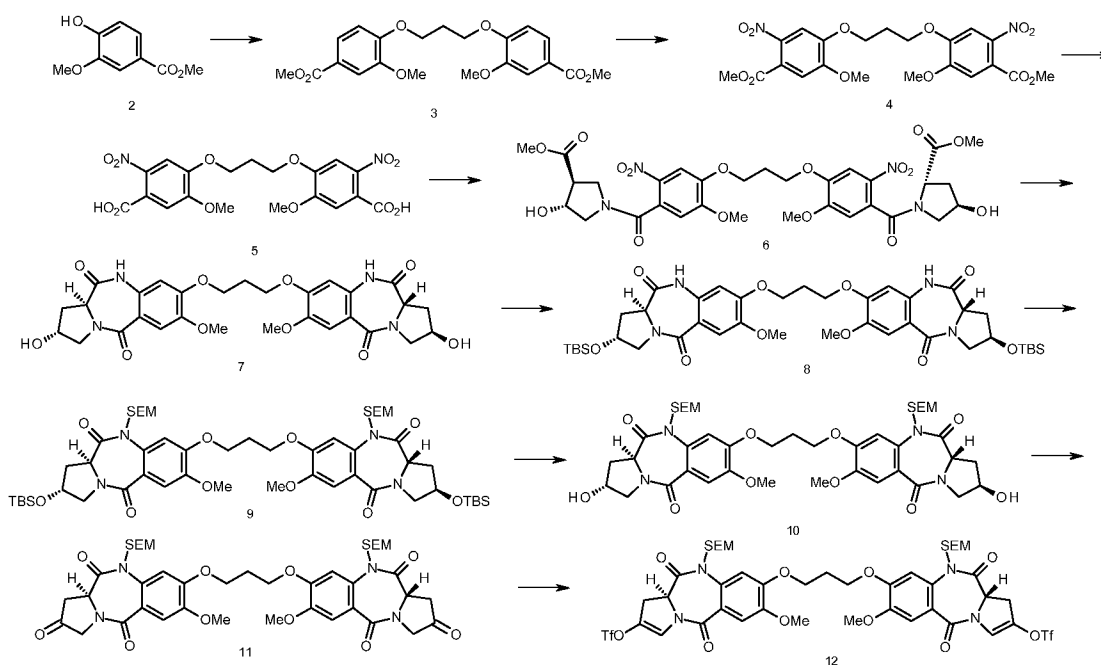
Flow rate 3.0 mL/min, 400 $\mu$ L was split via a zero dead volume tee piece which passes into the mass spectrometer. Wavelength detection range: 220 to 400 nm. Function type: diode array (535 scans). Column: Phenomenex Onyx Monolithic C18 50 x 4.60 mm.

- 10 The reverse phase flash purification conditions were as follows: The Flash purification system (Varian 971-Fp) was run using a mobile phase of water (A) and acetonitrile (B). Gradient: initial composition 5% B over 20 C.V. (Column Volume) then 5% B to 70% B within 60 C.V. The composition was held for 15 C.V. at 95% B, and then returned to 5% B in 5 C.V. and held at 5%B for 10 C.V. Total gradient run time equals 120 C.V. Flow rate 6.0 mL/min.
- 15 Wavelength detection range: 254 nm. Column: Agilent AX1372-1 SF10-5.5gC8.

Preparative HPLC: Reverse-phase ultra-high-performance liquid chromatography (UPLC) was carried out on Phenomenex Gemini NX 5 $\mu$  C-18 columns of the following dimensions: 150 x 4.6 mm for analysis, and 150 x 21.20 mm for preparative work. All UPLC experiments

20 were performed with gradient conditions. Eluents used were solvent A (H<sub>2</sub>O with 0.1% Formic acid) and solvent B (CH<sub>3</sub>CN with 0.1% Formic acid). Flow rates used were 1.0 ml/min for analytical, and 20.0 ml/min for preparative HPLC. Detection was at 254 and 280 nm.

25 **Synthesis of Intermediate 12**



(a) *1',3'-Bis[2-methoxy-4-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]propane (3)*

Diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (71.3 mL, 73.2 g, 362 mmol) was added drop-wise over a period of 60 min to an overhead stirred solution of methyl vanillate **2** (60.0 g, 329 mmol) and **5** Ph<sub>3</sub>P (129.4 g, 494 mmol) in anhydrous THF (800 mL) at 0-5°C (ice/acetone) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 0-5°C for an additional 1 hour after which time a solution of 1,3-propanediol (11.4 mL, 12.0 g, 158 mmol) in THF (12 mL) was added drop-wise over a period of 20 min. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 5 days. The resulting white precipitate **3** was collected by vacuum filtration, washed with THF and dried in a vacuum desiccator to constant weight. Yield = 54.7 g (84% based on 1,3-propanediol). Purity satisfactory by LC/MS (3.20 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 427 ([*M* + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 10); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.64 (dd, 2H, *J* = 1.8, 8.3 Hz), 7.54 (d, 2H, *J* = 1.8 Hz), 6.93 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 4.30 (t, 4H, *J* = 6.1 Hz), 3.90 (s, 6H), 3.89 (s, 6H), 2.40 (p, 2H, *J* = 6.0 Hz).

15

(b) *1',3'-Bis[2-methoxy-4-(methoxycarbonyl)-5-nitrophenoxy]propane (4)*

Solid Cu(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>·3H<sub>2</sub>O (81.5 g, 337.5 mmol) was added slowly to an overhead stirred slurry of the bis-ester **3** (54.7 g, 135 mmol) in acetic anhydride (650 mL) at 0-5°C (ice/acetone). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 1 hour at 0-5°C and then allowed to warm to room temperature. A mild exotherm (ca. 40-50°C), accompanied by thickening of the mixture and evolution of NO<sub>2</sub> was observed at this stage. Additional acetic anhydride (300 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 16 hours at room temperature. The

20

reaction mixture was poured on to ice (~ 1.5 L), stirred and allowed to return to room temperature. The resulting yellow precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration and dried in a desiccator to afford the desired *bis*-nitro compound **4** as a yellow solid. Yield = 66.7 g (100%). Purity satisfactory by LC/MS (3.25 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 517 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 40));  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  7.49 (s, 2H), 7.06 (s, 2H), 4.32 (t, 4H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 3.95 (s, 6H), 3.90 (s, 6H), 2.45–2.40 (m, 2H).

(c) *1',3'-Bis(4-carboxy-2-methoxy-5-nitrophenoxy) propane (5)*

A slurry of the methyl ester **4** (66.7 g, 135 mmol) in THF (700 mL) was treated with 1N NaOH (700 mL) and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir vigorously at room temperature. After 4 days stirring, the slurry became a dark coloured solution which was subjected to rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to remove THF. The resulting aqueous residue was acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl and the colourless precipitate **5** was collected and dried thoroughly in a vacuum oven (50 °C). Yield = 54.5 g (87%). Purity satisfactory by LC/MS (2.65 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 489 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 30));  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $DMSO-d_6$ )  $\delta$  7.62 (s, 2H), 7.30 (s, 2H), 4.29 (t, 4H,  $J = 6.0$  Hz), 3.85 (s, 6H), 2.30–2.26 (m, 2H).

(d) *1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis[(5-methoxy-2-nitro-1,4-phenylene)carbonyl]]bis[(2S,4R)-methyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate] (6)*

Oxalyl chloride (24.5 mL, 35.6 g, 281 mmol) was added to a stirred suspension of the nitrobenzoic acid **5** (43 g, 92.3 mmol) and DMF (6 mL) in anhydrous DCM (600mL). Following initial effervescence the reaction suspension became a solution and the mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 16 hours. Conversion to the acid chloride was confirmed by treating a sample of the reaction mixture with MeOH and the resulting *bis*-methyl ester was observed by LC/MS. The majority of solvent was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure; the resulting concentrated solution was re-dissolved in a minimum amount of dry DCM and triturated with diethyl ether. The resulting yellow precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with cold diethyl ether and dried for 1 hour in a vacuum oven at 40°C. The solid acid chloride was added portionwise over a period of 25 min to a stirred suspension of (2S,4R)-methyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate hydrochloride (38.1 g, 210 mmol) and TEA (64.5 mL, g, 463 mmol) in DCM (400mL) at -40°C (dry ice/ $CH_3CN$ ). Immediately, the reaction was complete as judged by LC/MS (2.47 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 721 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100). The mixture was diluted with DCM (200 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (300 mL), saturated  $NaHCO_3$  (300 mL), brine (400 mL), dried ( $MgSO_4$ ), filtered and the solvent evaporated *in vacuo* to give the pure product **6** as an orange solid (66.7 g,

100%).  $[\alpha]_D^{22} = -46.1^\circ$  ( $c = 0.47$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (rotamers)  $\delta$  7.63 (s, 2H), 6.82 (s, 2H), 4.79–4.72 (m, 2H), 4.49–4.28 (m, 6H), 3.96 (s, 6H), 3.79 (s, 6H), 3.46–3.38 (m, 2H), 3.02 (d, 2H,  $J = 11.1$  Hz), 2.48–2.30 (m, 4H), 2.29–2.04 (m, 4H);  $^{13}\text{C NMR}$  (100 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ ) (rotamers)  $\delta$  172.4, 166.7, 154.6, 148.4, 137.2, 127.0, 109.7, 108.2, 69.7, 65.1, 57.4, 57.0, 56.7, 52.4, 37.8, 29.0; IR (ATR,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3410 (br), 3010, 2953, 1741, 1622, 1577, 1519, 1455, 1429, 1334, 1274, 1211, 1177, 1072, 1050, 1008, 871  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 721 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 47), 388 (80); HRMS  $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$  theoretical  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_4\text{O}_{16}$   $m/z$  721.2199, found ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  721.2227.

10 (e) 1,1'-[[*(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy*]bis(11a*S*,2*R*)-2-(hydroxy)-7-methoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (7)

**Method A:** A solution of the nitro-ester **6** (44 g, 61.1 mmol) in MeOH (2.8 L) was added to freshly purchased Raney<sup>®</sup> nickel (~ 50 g of a ~ 50% slurry in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and anti-bumping granules in a 5L 3-neck round bottomed flask. The mixture was heated at reflux and then treated dropwise with a solution of hydrazine hydrate (21.6 mL, 22.2 g, 693 mmol) in MeOH (200 mL) at which point vigorous effervescence was observed. When the addition was complete (~ 45 min) additional Raney<sup>®</sup> nickel was added carefully until effervescence had ceased and the initial yellow colour of the reaction mixture was discharged. The mixture was heated at reflux for a further 5 min at which point the reaction was deemed complete by TLC (90:10 v/v  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$ ) and LC/MS (2.12 min ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 597 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 100)). The reaction mixture was filtered hot immediately through a sinter funnel containing celite with vacuum suction. The filtrate was reduced in volume by evaporation *in vacuo* at which point a colourless precipitate formed which was collected by filtration and dried in a vacuum desiccator to provide **7** (31 g, 85%).  $[\alpha]_D^{27} = +404^\circ$  ( $c = 0.10$ , DMF);  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-}d_6$ )  $\delta$  10.2 (s, 2H, NH), 7.26 (s, 2H), 6.73 (s, 2H), 5.11 (d, 2H,  $J = 3.98$  Hz, OH), 4.32–4.27 (m, 2H), 4.19–4.07 (m, 6H), 3.78 (s, 6H), 3.62 (dd, 2H,  $J = 12.1, 3.60$  Hz), 3.43 (dd, 2H,  $J = 12.0, 4.72$  Hz), 2.67–2.57 (m, 2H), 2.26 (p, 2H,  $J = 5.90$  Hz), 1.99–1.89 (m, 2H);  $^{13}\text{C NMR}$  (100 MHz,  $\text{DMSO-}d_6$ )  $\delta$  169.1, 164.0, 149.9, 144.5, 129.8, 117.1, 111.3, 104.5, 54.8, 54.4, 53.1, 33.5, 27.5; IR (ATR, neat) 3438, 1680, 1654, 1610, 1605, 1516, 1490, 1434, 1379, 1263, 1234, 1216, 1177, 1156, 1115, 1089, 1038, 1018, 952, 870  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 619 ( $[\text{M} + \text{Na}]^+$ , 10), 597 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 52), 445 (12), 326 (11); HRMS  $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$  theoretical  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{32}\text{N}_4\text{O}_{10}$   $m/z$  597.2191, found ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  597.2205.

**Method B:** A suspension of 10% Pd/C (7.5 g, 10% w/w) in DMF (40 mL) was added to a solution of the nitro-ester **6** (75 g, 104 mmol) in DMF (360 mL). The suspension was hydrogenated in a Parr hydrogenation apparatus over 8 hours. Progress of the reaction was

monitored by LC/MS after the hydrogen uptake had stopped. Solid Pd/C was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated by rotary evaporation under vacuum (below 10mbar) at 40°C to afford a dark oil containing traces of DMF and residual charcoal. The residue was digested in EtOH (500 mL) at 40°C on a water bath (rotary evaporator bath) and the resulting suspension was filtered through celite and washed with ethanol (500 mL) to give a clear filtrate. Hydrazine hydrate (10 mL, 321 mmol) was added to the solution and the reaction mixture was heated at reflux. After 20 minutes the formation of a white precipitate was observed and reflux was allowed to continue for a further 30 minutes. The mixture was allowed to cool down to room temperature and the precipitate was retrieved by filtration, washed with diethyl ether (2:1 volume of precipitate) and dried in a vacuum desiccator to provide **7** (50 g, 81%). Analytical data for method B: Identical to those obtained for Method A (optical rotation, <sup>1</sup>H NMR, LC/MS and TLC).

(f) *1,1'-[[[Propane-1,3-diyl]dioxy]bis(11a*S*,2*R*)-2-(tert-butyl)dimethylsilyloxy]-7-methoxy-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (8)*  
TBSCl (27.6 g, 182.9 mmol) and imidazole (29.9 g, 438.8 mmol) were added to a cloudy solution of the tetralactam **7** (21.8 g, 36.6 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (400 mL) at 0°C (ice/acetone). The mixture was allowed to stir under a nitrogen atmosphere for 3 hours after which time the reaction was deemed complete as judged by LC/MS (3.90 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 825 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100). The reaction mixture was poured onto ice (~ 1.75 L) and allowed to warm to room temperature with stirring. The resulting white precipitate was collected by vacuum filtration, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, diethyl ether and dried in the vacuum desiccator to provide pure **8** (30.1 g, 99%).  $[\alpha]_D^{23} = +234^\circ$  (*c* = 0.41, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.65 (s, 2H, NH), 7.44 (s, 2H), 6.54 (s, 2H), 4.50 (p, 2H, *J* = 5.38 Hz), 4.21–4.10 (m, 6H), 3.87 (s, 6H), 3.73–3.63 (m, 4H), 2.85–2.79 (m, 2H), 2.36–2.29 (m, 2H), 2.07–1.99 (m, 2H), 0.86 (s, 18H), 0.08 (s, 12H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (100 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 170.4, 165.7, 151.4, 146.6, 129.7, 118.9, 112.8, 105.3, 69.2, 65.4, 56.3, 55.7, 54.2, 35.2, 28.7, 25.7, 18.0, -4.82 and -4.86; IR (ATR, CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3235, 2955, 2926, 2855, 1698, 1695, 1603, 1518, 1491, 1446, 1380, 1356, 1251, 1220, 1120, 1099, 1033 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 825 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 62), 721 (14), 440 (38); HRMS  $[M + H]^+$  theoretical C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>60</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si<sub>2</sub> *m/z* 825.3921, found (ES+) *m/z* 825.3948.

(g) *1,1'-[[[Propane-1,3-diyl]dioxy]bis(11a*S*,2*R*)-2-(tert-butyl)dimethylsilyloxy]-7-methoxy-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (9)*



A solution of *n*-BuLi (68.3 mL of a 1.6 M solution in hexane, 109 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred suspension of the tetralactam **8** (30.08 g, 36.4 mmol) in anhydrous THF (600 mL) at -30°C (dry ice/ethylene glycol) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at this temperature for 1 hour (now a reddish orange colour) at which point a solution of SEMCl (19.3 mL, 18.2 g, 109 mmol) in anhydrous THF (120 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was allowed to slowly warm to room temperature and was stirred for 16 hours under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction was deemed complete as judged by TLC (EtOAc) and LC/MS (4.77 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1085 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100). The THF was removed by evaporation *in vacuo* and the resulting residue dissolved in EtOAc (750 mL), washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (250 mL), brine (250 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide the crude N10-SEM-protected tetralactam **9** as an oil (max<sup>m</sup> 39.5 g, 100%). Product carried through to next step without purification.  $[\alpha]_D^{23} = +163^\circ$  (*c* = 0.41, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.33 (s, 2H), 7.22 (s, 2H), 5.47 (d, 2H, *J* = 9.98 Hz), 4.68 (d, 2H, *J* = 9.99 Hz), 4.57 (p, 2H, *J* = 5.77 Hz), 4.29–4.19 (m, 6H), 3.89 (s, 6H), 3.79–3.51 (m, 8H), 2.87–2.81 (m, 2H), 2.41 (p, 2H, *J* = 5.81 Hz), 2.03–1.90 (m, 2H), 1.02–0.81 (m, 22H), 0.09 (s, 12H), 0.01 (s, 18H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (100 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  170.0, 165.7, 151.2, 147.5, 133.8, 121.8, 111.6, 106.9, 78.1, 69.6, 67.1, 65.5, 56.6, 56.3, 53.7, 35.6, 30.0, 25.8, 18.4, 18.1, -1.24, -4.73; IR (ATR, CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 2951, 1685, 1640, 1606, 1517, 1462, 1433, 1360, 1247, 1127, 1065 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1113 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 48), 1085 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100), 1009 (5), 813 (6); HRMS  $[M + H]^+$  theoretical C<sub>53</sub>H<sub>88</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>12</sub>Si<sub>4</sub> *m/z* 1085.5548, found (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 1085.5542.

(h) 1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis(11a*S*,2*R*)-2-hydroxy-7-methoxy-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11*a*-hexahydro-5*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (**10**)

A solution of TBAF (150 mL of a 1.0 M solution in THF, 150 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of the crude bis-silyl ether **9** [84.0 g (max<sup>m</sup> 56.8 g), 52.4 mmol] in THF (800 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 1 hour, analysis of the reaction mixture by TLC (95:5 v/v CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) revealed completion of reaction. The THF was removed by evaporation under reduced pressure at room temperature and the resulting residue dissolved in EtOAc (500 mL) and washed with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (300 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (60 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure to provide the crude product. Purification by flash chromatography (gradient elution: 100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 96:4 v/v CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) gave the pure tetralactam **10** as a white foam (36.0 g, 79%). LC/MS 3.33 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 879 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 100), 857 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 40);  $[\alpha]_D^{23} = +202^\circ$  (*c* = 0.34, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.28 (s, 2H), 7.20 (s, 2H), 5.44 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.0

Hz), 4.72 (d, 2H,  $J = 10.0$  Hz), 4.61–4.58 (m, 2H), 4.25 (t, 4H,  $J = 5.83$  Hz), 4.20–4.16 (m, 2H), 3.91–3.85 (m, 8H), 3.77–3.54 (m, 6H), 3.01 (br s, 2H, OH), 2.96–2.90 (m, 2H), 2.38 (p, 2H,  $J = 5.77$  Hz), 2.11–2.05 (m, 2H), 1.00–0.91 (m, 4H), 0.00 (s, 18H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (100 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  169.5, 165.9, 151.3, 147.4, 133.7, 121.5, 111.6, 106.9, 79.4, 69.3, 67.2, 65.2, 56.5, 56.2, 54.1, 35.2, 29.1, 18.4, -1.23; IR (ATR,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 2956, 1684, 1625, 1604, 1518, 1464, 1434, 1361, 1238, 1058, 1021  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 885 ( $[\text{M} + 29]^+$ , 70), 857 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 100), 711 (8), 448 (17); HRMS  $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$  theoretical  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{60}\text{N}_4\text{O}_{12}\text{Si}_2$   $m/z$  857.3819, found ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  857.3826.

10 (i) 1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-oxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1,2,3,10,11,11a-hexahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (11)

Diol **10** (25.6 g, 30 mmol, 1 eq.), NaOAc (6.9 g, 84 mmol, 2.8 eq.) and TEMPO (188 mg, 1.2 mmol, 0.04 eq.) were dissolved in DCM (326 mL) under Ar. This was cooled to  $-8^\circ\text{C}$  (internal temperature) and TCCA (9.7 g, 42 mmol, 1.4 eq.) was added portionwise over 15 minutes. TLC (EtOAc) and LC/MS [3.60 min. ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 854.21 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 40), ( $\text{ES}^-$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 887.07 ( $[\text{M} - \text{H} + \text{Cl}]^-$ , 10)] after 30 minutes indicated that reaction was complete. Cold DCM (200 mL) was added and the mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite before washing with a solution of saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate/ sodium thiosulfate (1:1 v/v; 200 mL x 2). The organic layer was dried with  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo* to yield a yellow/orange sponge (25.4 g, 99%). LC/MS [3.60 min. ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 854.21 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 40);  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +291^\circ$  ( $c = 0.26$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ );  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.32 (s, 2H), 7.25 (s, 2H), 5.50 (d, 2H,  $J = 10.1$  Hz), 4.75 (d, 2H,  $J = 10.1$  Hz), 4.60 (dd, 2H,  $J = 9.85$ , 3.07 Hz), 4.31–4.18 (m, 6H), 3.89–3.84 (m, 8H), 3.78–3.62 (m, 4H), 3.55 (dd, 2H,  $J = 19.2$ , 2.85 Hz), 2.76 (dd, 2H,  $J = 19.2$ , 9.90 Hz), 2.42 (p, 2H,  $J = 5.77$  Hz), 0.98–0.91 (m, 4H), 0.00 (s, 18H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (100 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  206.8, 168.8, 165.9, 151.8, 148.0, 133.9, 120.9, 111.6, 107.2, 78.2, 67.3, 65.6, 56.3, 54.9, 52.4, 37.4, 29.0, 18.4, -1.24; IR (ATR,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 2957, 1763, 1685, 1644, 1606, 1516, 1457, 1434, 1360, 1247, 1209, 1098, 1066, 1023  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ; MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 881 ( $[\text{M} + 29]^+$ , 38), 853 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 100), 707 (8), 542 (12); HRMS  $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$  theoretical  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{56}\text{N}_4\text{O}_{12}\text{Si}_2$   $m/z$  853.3506, found ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  853.3502.

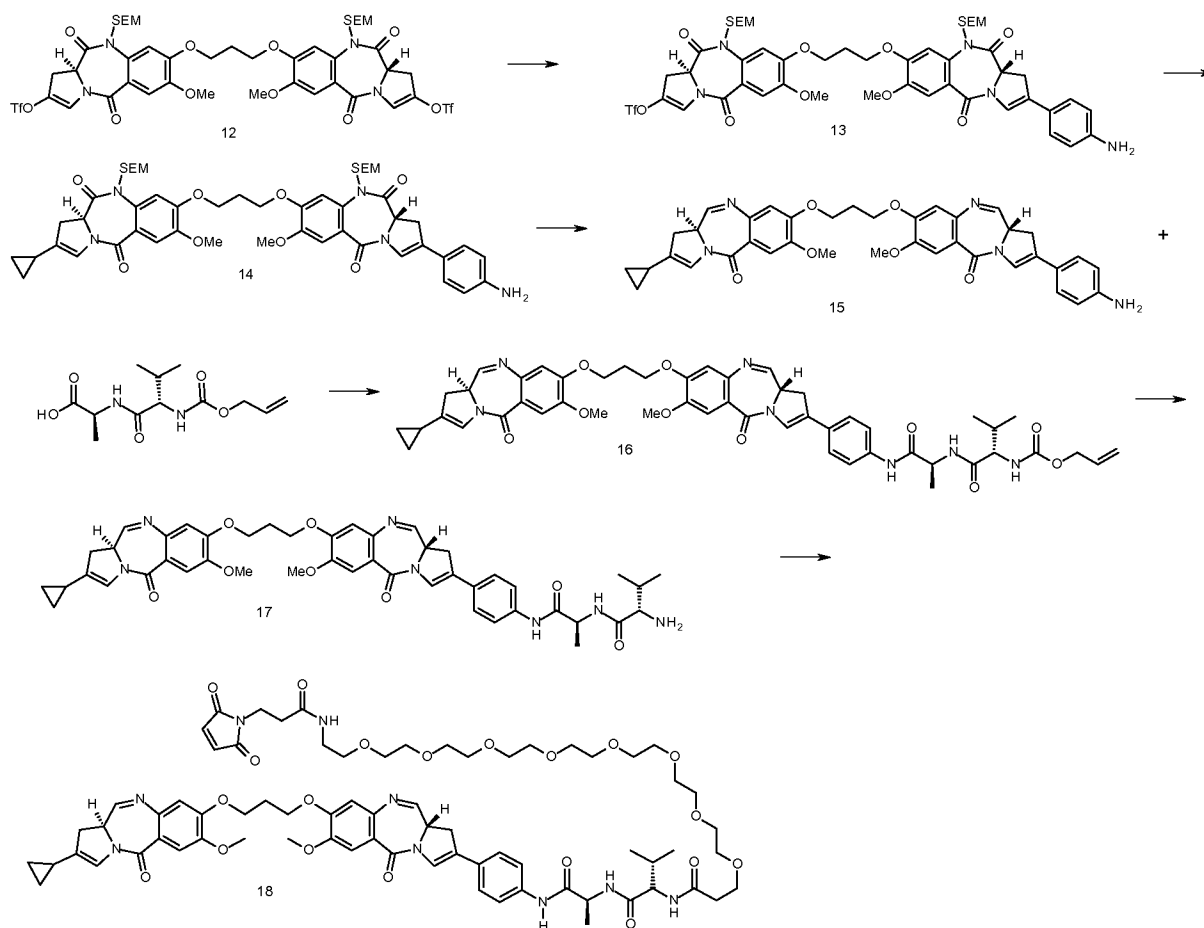
35 (j) 1,1'-[[[(Propane-1,3-diyl)dioxy]bis(11aS)-7-methoxy-2-[[[(trifluoromethyl)sulfonyl]oxy]-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-5H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]-benzodiazepin-5,11-dione] (12)

Anhydrous 2,6-lutidine (5.15 mL, 4.74 g, 44.2 mmol) was injected in one portion to a vigorously stirred solution of bis-ketone **11** (6.08 g, 7.1 mmol) in dry DCM (180 mL) at -45°C (dry ice/acetonitrile) under a nitrogen atmosphere. Anhydrous triflic anhydride, taken from a freshly opened ampoule (7.2 mL, 12.08 g, 42.8 mmol), was injected rapidly dropwise, while  
5 maintaining the temperature at -40°C or below. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at -45°C for 1 hour at which point TLC (50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) revealed the complete consumption of starting material. The cold reaction mixture was immediately diluted with DCM (200 mL) and, with vigorous shaking, washed with water (1 x 100 mL), 5% citric acid solution (1 x 200 mL) saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (200 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>).

10 Filtration and evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure afforded the crude product which was purified by flash column chromatography (gradient elution: 90:10 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 70:30 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford bis-enol triflate **12** as a yellow foam (5.5 g, 70%). LC/MS 4.32 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1139 ([*M* + Na]<sup>+</sup>, 20); [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>24</sup> = +271° (*c* = 0.18, CHCl<sub>3</sub>); <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.33 (s, 2H), 7.26 (s, 2H), 7.14 (t, 2H, *J* = 1.97 Hz), 5.51 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.1 Hz), 4.76 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.1 Hz), 4.62 (dd, 2H, *J* = 11.0, 3.69 Hz), 4.32–4.23 (m, 4H), 3.94–3.90 (m, 8H), 3.81–3.64 (m, 4H), 3.16 (ddd, 2H, *J* = 16.3, 11.0, 2.36 Hz), 2.43 (p, 2H, *J* = 5.85 Hz), 1.23–0.92 (m, 4H), 0.02 (s, 18H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (100 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 167.1, 162.7, 151.9, 148.0, 138.4, 133.6, 120.2, 118.8, 111.9, 107.4, 78.6, 67.5, 65.6, 56.7, 56.3, 30.8, 29.0, 18.4, -1.25; IR (ATR, CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 2958, 1690, 1646, 1605,  
1517, 1456, 1428, 1360, 1327, 1207, 1136, 1096, 1060, 1022, 938, 913 cm<sup>-1</sup>; MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1144 ([*M* + 28]<sup>+</sup>, 100), 1117 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 48), 1041 (40), 578 (8); HRMS [*M* + H]<sup>+</sup> theoretical C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>54</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>16</sub>Si<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>F<sub>6</sub> *m/z* 1117.2491, found (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 1117.2465.

20

## Example 1



(a) *(S)*-8-(3-(((*S*)-2-(4-aminophenyl)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**13**)

Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (116.9 mg, 0.101 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of the bis-enol triflate **12** (5.65 g, 5.06 mmol), 4-Aminophenylboronic acid pinacol ester (1 g, 4.56 mmol), Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (2.46 g, 23.2 mmol), MeOH (37 mL), toluene (74 mL) and water (37 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 30°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 24 hours after which time all the boronic ester has consumed. The reaction mixture was then evaporated to dryness before the residue was taken up in EtOAc (150 mL) and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 100 mL), brine (150 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure to provide the crude product. Purification by flash chromatography (gradient elution: 80:20 v/v Hexane/EtOAc to 60:40 v/v Hexane/EtOAc) afforded product **13** as a yellowish foam (2.4 g, 45%). LC/MS 4.02 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1060.21 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100); <sup>1</sup>H-NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400 MHz) δ 7.40 (s, 1H), 7.33 (s, 1H), 7.27 (bs, 3H), 7.24 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 7.15 (t, 1H, *J* = 2.0 Hz), 6.66 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 5.52 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.0 Hz), 4.77 (d, 1H, *J* = 10.0 Hz),

4.76 (d, 1H,  $J = 10.0$  Hz), 4.62 (dd, 1H,  $J = 3.7, 11.0$  Hz), 4.58 (dd, 1H,  $J = 3.4, 10.6$  Hz), 4.29 (t, 4H,  $J = 5.6$  Hz), 4.00-3.85 (m, 8H), 3.80 – 3.60 (m, 4H), 3.16 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 2.4, 11.0, 16.3$  Hz), 3.11 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 2.2, 10.5, 16.1$  Hz), 2.43 (p, 2H,  $J = 5.9$  Hz), 1.1-0.9 (m, 4H), 0.2 (s, 18H).  $^{13}\text{C-NMR}$ : ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ , 100 MHz)  $\delta$  169.8, 168.3, 164.0, 162.7, 153.3, 152.6, 149.28, 149.0, 147.6, 139.6, 134.8, 134.5, 127.9, 127.5, 125.1, 123.21, 121.5, 120.5, 120.1, 116.4, 113.2, 108.7, 79.8, 79.6, 68.7, 68.5, 67.0, 66.8, 58.8, 58.0, 57.6, 32.8, 32.0, 30.3, 19.7, 0.25.

(b) (S)-2-(4-Aminophenyl)-8-(3-(((S)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-5,11(10H,11aH)-dione (**14**)

Triphenylarsine (0.24 g, 0.8 mmol), silver (I) oxide (1.02 g, 4.4 mmol), cyclopropylboronic acid (0.47 g, 5.5 mmol) and starting material **13** (1.15 g, 1.1 mmol) were dissolved in dioxane (30 mL) under an argon atmosphere. Potassium phosphate tribasic (2.8 g, 13.2 mmol) was ground-up with a pestle and mortar and quickly added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was evacuated and flushed with argon 3 times and heated to 71°C. Palladium (II) *bis* (benzotrile chloride) (84 mg, 0.22 mmol) was added and the reaction vessel was evacuated and flushed with argon 3 times. After 10 minutes a small sample was taken for analysis by TLC (80:20 v/v ethyl acetate/hexane) and LC/MS. After 30 minutes the reaction had gone to completion (LC/MS analysis indicated complete consumption of starting material) and the reaction was filtered through celite and the filter pad washed with ethyl acetate (400 mL). The filtrate was washed with water (2 x 200 mL) and brine (2 x 200 mL). The organic layer was dried with  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*.

Purification by silica gel column chromatography (30:70 v/v Hexane/ Ethyl acetate) afforded the product **14** as an orangey/yellow solid (0.66 g, 63%). Method 1, LC/MS (3.85 min ( $\text{ES}^+$ )  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 952.17 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 100).  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.36 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.30 (s, 1H), 7.25 - 7.19 (m, 4H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 6.62 (d, 2H,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 5.49 (dd, 2H,  $J = 5.6, 10.0$  Hz), 4.73 (app. t, 2H,  $J = 10.8$  Hz), 4.54 (dd, 1H,  $J = 3.2, 10.4$  Hz), 4.40 (dd, 1H,  $J = 3.2, 10.4$  Hz), 4.29 - 4.23 (m, 4H), 3.91 - 3.85 (m, 7H), 3.80 - 3.71 (m, 2H), 3.70 - 3.61 (m, 2H), 3.38 - 3.32 (m, 1H), 3.12 - 3.01 (m, 1H), 2.50 - 2.69 (m, 1H), 2.40 (q, 2H,  $J = 5.6$  Hz), 1.50 - 1.43 (m, 1H), 0.99 - 0.71 (m, 6H), 0.54 - 0.59 (m, 2H), 0.00 (s, 18H) ppm.

(c) (S)-2-(4-Aminophenyl)-8-(3-(((S)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-5(11aH)-one (**15**)

SEM dilactam **14** (0.66 g, 0.69 mmol) was dissolved in THF (23 mL) and cooled to -78°C under an argon atmosphere. Super-Hydride® solution (1.7 mL, 1 M in THF) was added drop wise over 5 minutes while monitoring the temperature. After 20 minutes a small sample was taken and washed with water for LC/MS analysis. Water (50 mL) was added and the cold bath was removed. The organic layer was extracted and washed with brine (60 mL). The combined aqueous layers were washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (90/10 v/v) (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. The crude product was dissolved in MeOH (48 mL), CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (18 mL) and water (6 mL) and sufficient silica gel was added to afford a thick suspension. After 5 days stirring, the suspension was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (9:1) (~200 mL) until product ceased to be eluted. The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 70 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 96/4 v/v CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) afforded the product **15** as a yellow solid (302 mg, 66%). Method 1, LC/MS (2.42 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 660.74 ([M + H]<sup>+</sup>, 30). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 3.6 Hz), 7.78 (d, 1H, *J* = 3.6 Hz), 7.58 – 7.44 (m, 3H), 7.34 – 7.20 (m, 3H), 6.88 – 6.66 (m, 4H), 4.35 – 4.15 (m, 6H), 3.95 – 3.75 (m, 7H), 3.39 – 3.22 (m, 1H), 3.14 – 3.04 (m, 1H), 2.93 - 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.46 – 2.36 (m, 2H), 1.49 – 1.41 (m, 1H), 0.80 – 0.72 (m, 2H), 0.58 – 0.51 (app. s, 2H) ppm.

(d) Allyl ((2S)-1-(((2S)-1-((4-(8-(3-(((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**16**)

In a degassed round bottom flask filled with argon, HO-Ala-Val-alloc (149.6 mg, 0.549 mmol) and EEDQ (135.8 mg, 0.549 mmol) were dissolved in a 9:1 mixture of dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (5 mL). The flask was wrapped in aluminium foil and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 1 hour before starting material **15** (302 mg, 0.457 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was left to stir for a further 40 hours at room temperature before the volatiles were removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure (the reaction was followed by LC/MS, RT starting material 2.32 min, (ES<sup>+</sup> 660.29 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 100)). The crude product was directly purified by silica gel chromatography column (100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 90/10 v/v CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) to afford the pure product (**16**) in 42% yield (174 mg). Method 2 LC/MS (2.70 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 914.73 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 60), 660.43 (60), 184.31 (100)).

(e) (2S)-2-amino-N-((2S)-1-((4-(8-(3-((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)-3-methylbutanamide (**17**)

The starting material **16** (170 mg, 0.185 mmol) was dissolved in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) in a round bottom flask filled with argon, before pyrrolidine (41 µL, 0.21 mmol) was added. The flask was purged/refilled three times with argon before Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (14 mg, 0.084 mmol) was added and the flushing operation repeated. After 1 hour, complete consumption of starting material was observed (the reaction was followed by LC/MS) and Et<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL) was added to the reaction mixture which was allowed to stir until all the product had crashed out of solution. The solid was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed twice with Et<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 25 mL). The collecting flask was replaced and the isolated solid was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (100 mL or until all the product had passed through the sintered funnel). The volatiles were then removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the crude product **17** which was used directly in the next step (168 mg). LC/MS method 2 (2.70 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 830.27 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 50), 660.13 (80), 171.15 (100)).

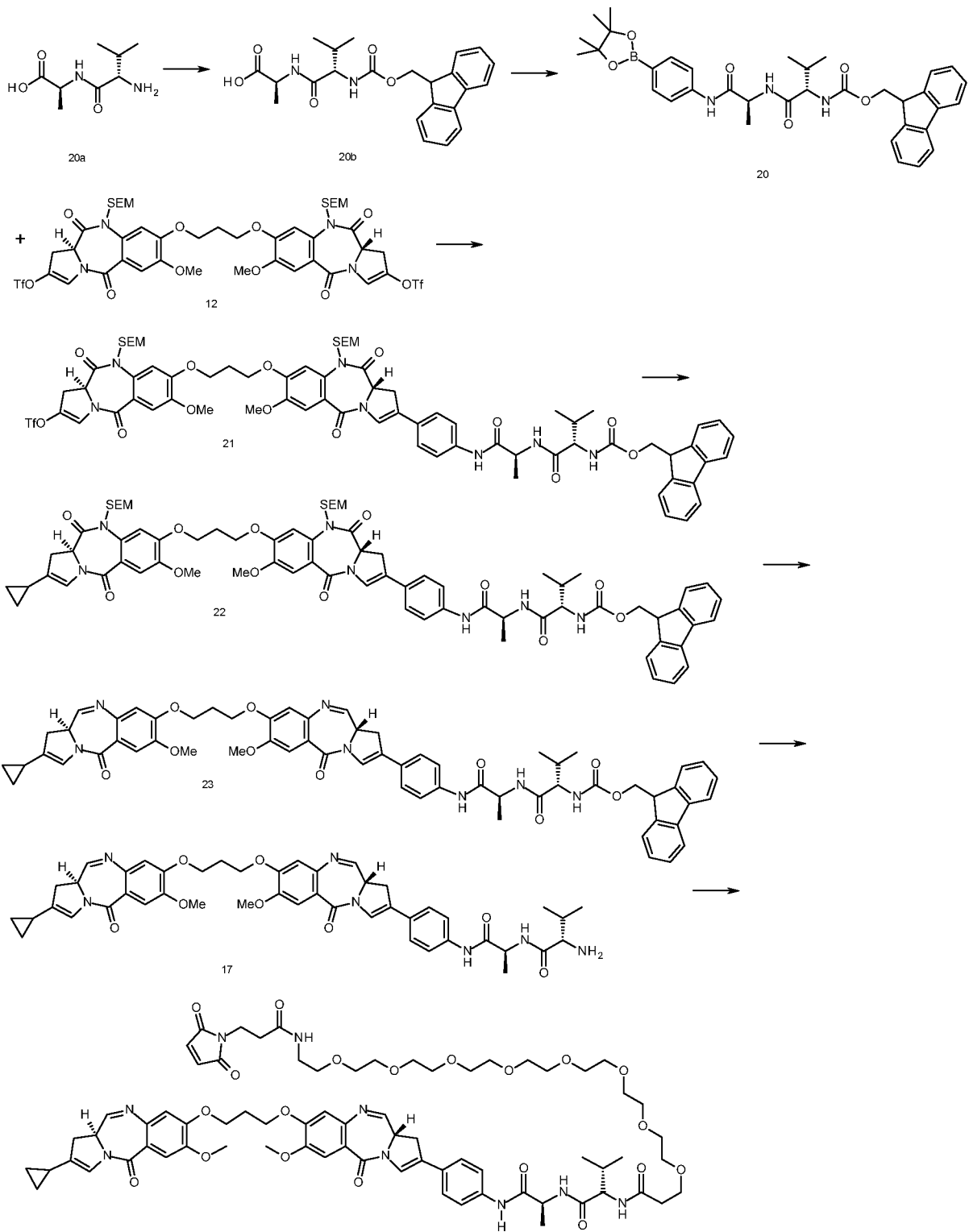
(f) N-((R)-1-(((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)-1-(3-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)propanamido)-3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24-octaoxaheptacosan-27-amide (**18**)

Starting material **17** (154 mg, 0.185 mmol) and EDCI.HCl (110 mg, 0.185 mmol) were solubilised in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) in a round bottom flask purged and filled with argon. The mixture was left to stir at room temperature for 1 hour before PEG<sub>8</sub>-maleimide (35.6 mg, 0.185 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for a further 16 hours (or until the reaction is complete, monitored by LC/MS). The reaction solution was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL) and the organics were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) before being dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the crude product. Purification on silica gel column chromatography (100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 85/15 v/v CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) gave the desired product (135mg), however remaining traces of unreacted PEG<sub>8</sub>-maleimide were observed (by LC/MS, 2.21 min, method 2). Automated reverse phase silica gel chromatography (H<sub>2</sub>O/CH<sub>3</sub>CN) (see general information for conditions) successfully removed the impurity affording pure final product (**18**, 37mg of pure product starting from 110mg, 33%). Overall yield = 17%. Method 2 LC/MS

(2.58 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1404.03 ( $[M+H]^+$ , 20), 702.63 (100)).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.91 (t,  $J = 3.5$  Hz, 1H), 7.80 (d,  $J = 4.0$  Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 1H), 7.69 (d,  $J = 8.7$  Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.50 (m, 2H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.39 – 7.31 (m, 2H), 6.87 (d,  $J = 10.5$  Hz, 2H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 6.72 – 6.68 (m, 2H), 4.74 – 4.62 (m, 1H), 4.45 – 4.17 (m, 7H), 5 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.67 – 3.58 (m, 34H), 3.54 (m, 2H), 3.42 (dd,  $J = 10.2, 5.2$  Hz, 2H), 3.16 – 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.92 (dd,  $J = 16.1, 4.1$  Hz, 1H), 2.62 – 2.49 (m, 4H), 2.48 – 2.39 (m, 2H), 2.37 – 2.25 (m, 1H), 1.92 (s, 1H), 1.52 – 1.44 (m, 3H), 1.10 – 0.93 (m, 6H), 0.79 (dd,  $J = 9.2, 5.3$  Hz, 2H), 0.57 (dd,  $J = 9.2, 5.3$  Hz, 2H), NH were not observed.



Example 2



(a) *(R)*-2-((*R*)-2-(((9*H*-fluoren-9-yl)methoxy)carbonyl)amino)-3-methylbutanamido) propanoic acid (**20b**)

HO-Ala-Val-H **20a** (350 mg, 1.86 mmol) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (493 mg, 4.65 mmol) were dissolved in distilled H<sub>2</sub>O (15 mL) and the mixture was cooled to 0°C before dioxane (15 mL) was added (partial precipitation of the amino acid salt occurred). A solution of Fmoc-Cl (504 mg, 1.95 mmol) in dioxane (15 mL) was added dropwise with vigorous stirring over 10 minutes. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours before the ice bath was removed and stirring was maintained for 16 hours. The solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in water (150 mL). The pH was adjusted from 9 to 2 with 1N HCl and the aqueous layer was subsequently extracted with EtOAc (3x100 mL). The combined organics were washed with brine (100 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the volatiles removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford pure HO-Ala-Val-Fmoc **20b** (746 mg, 97% yield). LC/MS 2.85 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 410.60 ; <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.79 (d, *J*=7.77 Hz, 2H), 7.60(d, *J*=7.77 Hz, 2H), 7.43(d, *J*=7.5 Hz, 2H), 7.34 (d, *J*=7.5 Hz, 2H), 6.30 (bs, 1H), 5.30 (bs, 1H), 4.71-7.56 (m, 1H), 4.54-4.36 (m, 2H), 4.08-3.91 (m, 1H), 2.21-2.07 (m, 1H), 1.50 (d, *J*=7.1 Hz, 3H), 1.06-0.90 (m, 6H).

(b) *(9H*-fluoren-9-yl)methyl ((*S*)-3-methyl-1-oxo-1-(((*S*)-1-oxo-1-((4-(4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl)phenyl)amino)propan-2-yl)amino)butan-2-yl)carbamate (**20**)

4-Aminophenylboronic acid pinacol ester was added (146.9 mg, 0.67 mmol) was added to a solution of HO-Ala-Val-Fmoc **20b** (330mg, 0.8 mmol), DCC (166 mg, 0.8 mmol) and DMAP (5 mg, cat.) in dry DCM (8 mL) previously stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature in a flask flushed with argon. The reaction mixture was then allowed to stir at room temperature overnight. The reaction was followed by LCMS and TLC. The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the organics were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and brine before being dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was dryloaded on a silicagel chromatography column (Hexane/EtOAc, 6:4) and pure product **20** was isolated as a white solid in 88% yield (360 mg).

(c) 8-(3-((2-(4-(((*S*)-2-(((9*H*-fluoren-9-yl)methoxy)carbonyl)amino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)phenyl)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-2-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**21**)

Bis-triflate **12** (2.03g, 1.81 mmol), boronic pinacol ester (1g, 1.63 mmol) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (881 mg, 8.31 mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of toluene/MeOH/H<sub>2</sub>O, 2:1:1 (40 mL). The

reaction flask was purged and filled with argon three times before *tetrakis*(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (41 mg, 0.035 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture heated to 30°C overnight. The solvents were removed under reduce pressure and the residue was taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organics were washed with brine (100 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the volatiles removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography column (Hexane/EtOAc, 8:2 to 25:75) to afford pure **21** in 33% yield (885 mg). LC/MS 3.85 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1452.90 ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.78 – 7.16 (m, 17H), 7.13 (s, 1H), 6.51 – 6.24 (m, 1H), 5.51 (dd, *J* = 10.0, 5.1 Hz, 2H), 5.36 – 5.11 (m, 1H), 4.74 (dd, *J* = 10.1, 4.4 Hz, 2H), 4.70 – 4.53 (m, 2H), 4.47 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 4.37 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1H), 4.27 (m, 4H), 4.20 – 4.14 (m, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.77 (ddd, *J* = 16.7, 9.0, 6.4 Hz, 3H), 3.71 – 3.61 (m, 2H), 3.24 – 2.91 (m, 3H), 2.55 – 2.33 (m, 2H), 2.22 – 2.07 (m, 1H), 1.52 – 1.37 (m, 3H), 1.04 – 0.86 (m, 10H), 0.00 (s, 18H).

(d) (9H-fluoren-9-yl)methyl((2S)-1-(((2S)-1-((4-(8-(3-((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**22**)

Triphenylarsine (42 mg, 0.137 mmol) was added to a mixture of PBD-triflate **21** (250 mg, 0.172 mmol), cyclopropylboronic acid (73.9 mg, 0.86 mmol), silver oxide (159 mg, 0.688 mmol) and potassium phosphate tribasic (438 mg, 2.06 mmol) in dry dioxane (10 mL) under an argon atmosphere. The reaction was flushed with argon 3 times and *bis*(benzonitrile)palladium(II) chloride (13.2 mg, 0.034 mmol) was added. The reaction was flushed with Argon 3 more times before being warmed to 75°C and stirred for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite which was subsequently rinsed with ethyl acetate. The solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; 1 % methanol/chloroform). Pure fractions were collected and combined, and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the desired product **22** (132 mg, 50 % yield). LC/MS 3.83 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1345.91 ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.88 – 7.14 (m, 17H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 6.45 – 6.25 (m, 1H), 5.57 – 5.41 (m, 2H), 5.34 – 5.14 (m, 1H), 4.78 – 4.67 (m, 2H), 4.62 – 4.55 (m, 1H), 4.50 – 4.45 (m, 2H), 4.51 – 4.44 (m, 1H), 4.31 – 4.21 (m, 4H), 4.16 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.82 – 3.71 (m, 2H), 3.66 (m, 3H), 3.40 – 3.28 (m, 1H), 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.70 – 2.57 (m, 1H), 2.47 – 2.36 (m, 2H), 2.15

(m, 1H), 1.51 – 1.40 (m, 3H), 1.03 – 0.87 (m, 11H), 0.77 – 0.71 (m, 2H), 0.60 – 0.54 (m, 2H), 0.00 (t,  $J = 3.0$  Hz, 18H).

(e) (9H-fluoren-9-yl)methyl((2S)-1-(((2S)-1-((4-(8-(3-((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**23**)

A solution of Super-Hydride® (0.5 mL, 1M in THF) was added dropwise to a solution of SEM dilactam **22** (265 mg, 0.19 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at -78°C under an argon atmosphere.

10 The addition was completed over 5 minutes in order to maintain the internal temperature of the reaction mixture constant. After 20 minutes, an aliquot was quenched with water for LC/MS analysis, which revealed that the reaction was complete. Water (20 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the cold bath was removed. The organic layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL) and the combined organics were washed with brine (50 mL), dried with  
15 MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was dissolved in MeOH (12 mL), CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (6 mL), water (2 mL) and enough silica gel to form a thick stirring suspension. After 5 days, the suspension was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (9:1) (200 mL) until the elution of the product was complete. The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 70 mL), dried with  
20 MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 96% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/ 4% MeOH) afforded the product **23** as a yellow solid (162 mg, 78%). LC/MS 3.02 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1052.37.

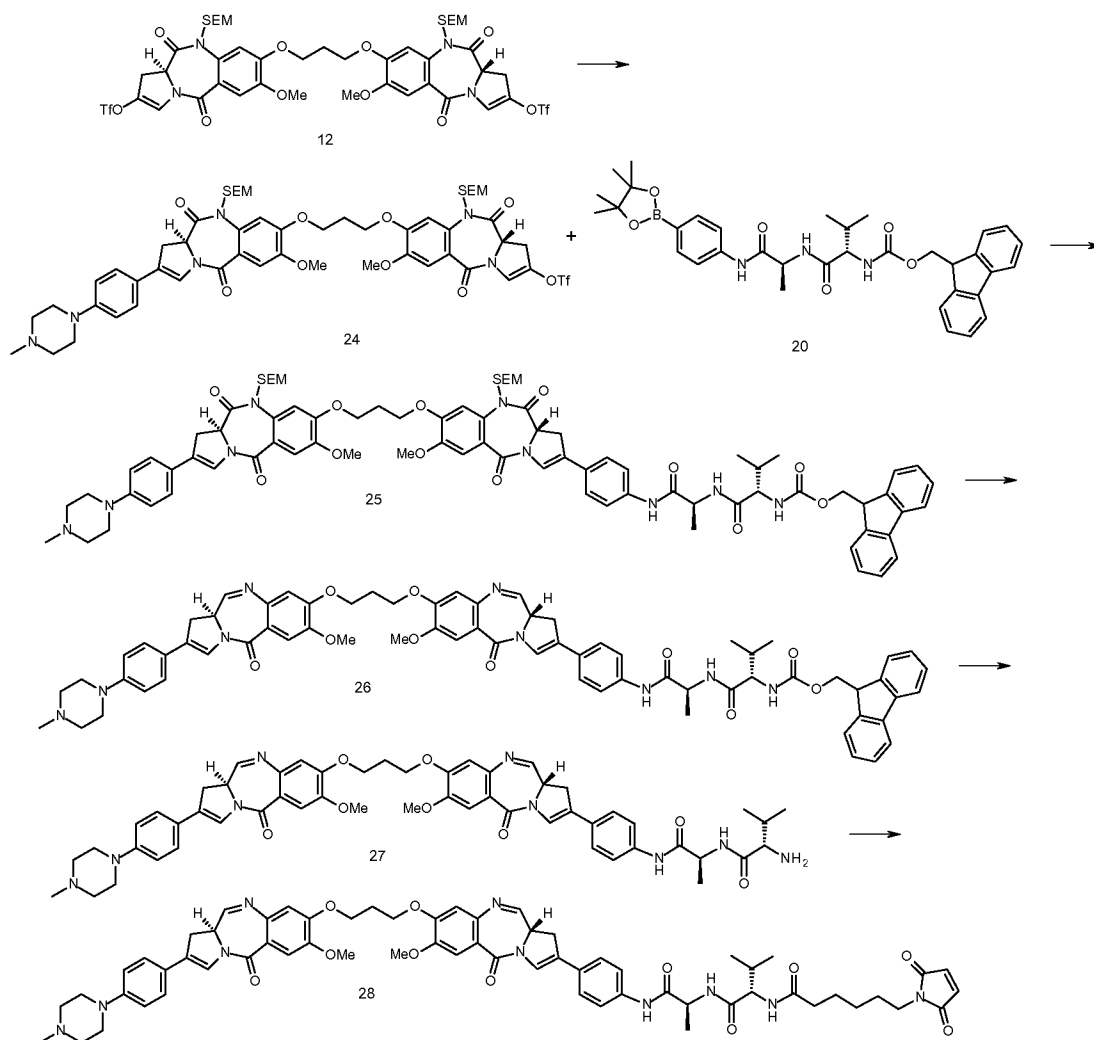
25 (f) (2S)-2-amino-N-((2S)-1-((4-(8-(3-((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)-3-methylbutanamide (**17**)

Excess piperidine was added (0.2 mL, 2 mmol) to a solution of SEM-dilactam **23** (76 mg, 0.073 mmol) in DMF (1 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 20 min,  
30 at which point the reaction had gone to completion (as monitored by LC/MS). The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (75 mL) and the organic phase was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3x75 mL) until complete piperidine removal. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford crude  
35 product **17** which was used as such in the next step. LC/MS 2.32 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 830.00.

(g) *N*-((2*S*)-1-(((2*S*)-1-((4-(8-(3-((2-cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)-1-(3-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrol-1-yl)propanamido)-3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24-octaoxaheptacosan-27-amide (**18**)

EDCI hydrochloride (14 mg, 0.0732 mmol) was added to a suspension of Maleimide-PEG<sub>8</sub>-acid (43.4 mg, 0.0732 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) under argon atmosphere. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature before PBD **17** (60.7 mg, 0.0732 mmol) was added. Stirring was maintained until the reaction was complete (usually 5 hours). The reaction was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the organic phase was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and brine before being dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The product was purified by careful silica gel chromatography (slow elution starting with 100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> up to 9:1 CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) followed by reverse phase chromatography to remove unreacted maleimide-PEG<sub>8</sub>-acid. The product **18** was isolated in 17.6% (21.8 mg). LC/MS 2.57 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1405.30 ; <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.91 (t, *J* = 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (d, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.69 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.54 – 7.50 (m, 2H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.39 – 7.31 (m, 2H), 6.87 (d, *J* = 10.5 Hz, 2H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 6.72 – 6.68 (m, 2H), 4.74 – 4.62 (m, 1H), 4.45 – 4.17 (m, 7H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.67 – 3.58 (m, 34H), 3.54 (m, 2H), 3.42 (dd, *J* = 10.2, 5.2 Hz, 2H), 3.16 – 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.92 (dd, *J* = 16.1, 4.1 Hz, 1H), 2.62 – 2.49 (m, 4H), 2.48 – 2.39 (m, 2H), 2.37 – 2.25 (m, 1H), 1.92 (s, 1H), 1.52 – 1.44 (m, 3H), 1.10 – 0.93 (m, 6H), 0.79 (dd, *J* = 9.2, 5.3 Hz, 2H), 0.57 (dd, *J* = 9.2, 5.3 Hz, 2H), NH were not observed.

## Example 3



(a) **(S)**-7-methoxy-8-(3-(((**S**)-7-methoxy-2-(4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl)-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**24**)

Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (20.6 mg, 0.018 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of the bis-enol triflate **12** (500 mg, 0.44 mmol), N-methyl piperazine boronic ester (100 mg, 0.4 mmol), Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (218 mg, 2.05 mmol), MeOH (2.5 mL), toluene (5 mL) and water (2.5 mL). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 30°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 24 hours after which time all the boronic ester has consumed. The reaction mixture was then evaporated to dryness before the residue was taken up in EtOAc (100 mL) and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure to provide the crude product. Purification by flash chromatography (gradient elution: 80:20 v/v Hexane/EtOAc to 60:40 v/v Hexane/EtOAc) afforded product **24** as a yellowish foam (122.6 mg, 25%).

LC/MS 3.15 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1144 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 20%).

(b) (9*H*-fluoren-9-yl)methyl ((*S*)-1-(((*S*)-1-((4-((*S*)-7-methoxy-8-(3-(((*S*)-7-methoxy-2-(4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl)-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**25**)

PBD-triflate **24** (359 mg, 0.314 mmol), boronic pinacol ester **20** (250 mg, 0.408 mmol) and triethylamine (0.35 mL, 2.51 mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of toluene/MeOH/H<sub>2</sub>O, 2:1:1 (3 mL). The microwave vessel was purged and filled with argon three times before *tetrakis*(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (21.7 mg, 0.018 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture placed in the microwave at 80°C for 10 minutes. Subsequently, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (100 mL) was added and the organics were washed with water (2 x 50 mL) and brine (50 mL) before being dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the volatiles removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography column (CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH, 100% to 9:1) to afford pure **25** (200 mg, 43% yield). LC/MS 3.27 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1478 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100%).

(c) (9*H*-fluoren-9-yl)methyl ((*S*)-1-(((*S*)-1-((4-((*S*)-7-methoxy-8-(3-(((*S*)-7-methoxy-2-(4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,1-*c*][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**26**)

A solution of Super-Hydride® (0.34 mL, 1M in THF) was added dropwise to a solution of SEM-dilactam **25** (200 mg, 0.135 mmol) in THF (5 mL) at -78°C under an argon atmosphere. The addition was completed over 5 minutes in order to maintain the internal temperature of the reaction mixture constant. After 20 minutes, an aliquot was quenched with water for LC/MS analysis, which revealed that the reaction was complete. Water (20 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the cold bath was removed. The organic layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL) and the combined organics were washed with brine (50 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was dissolved in MeOH (6 mL), CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL), water (1 mL) and enough silica gel to form a thick stirring suspension. After 5 days, the suspension was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (9:1) (100 mL) until the elution of the product was complete. The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 50 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> to 96% CHCl<sub>3</sub>/4% MeOH)

afforded the product **26** as a yellow solid (100 mg, 63%). LC/MS 2.67 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1186 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 5%).

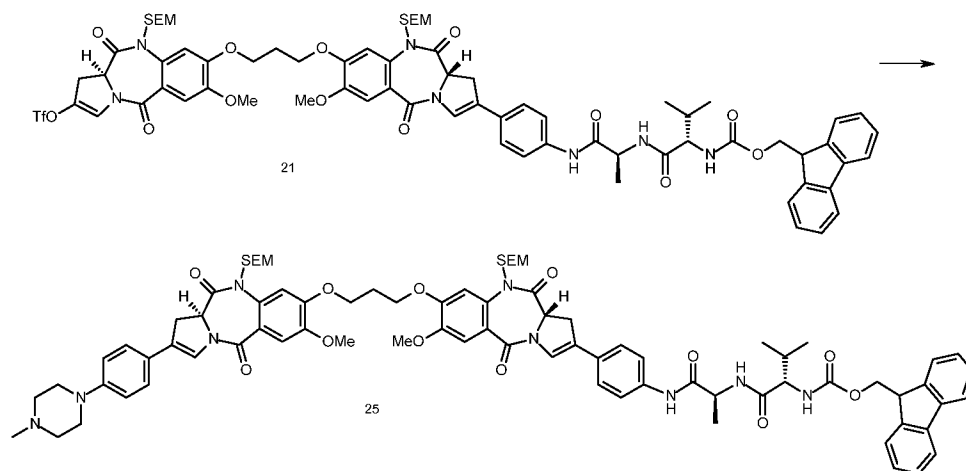
(d) **(S)**-2-amino-N-((**S**)-1-((4-((**R**)-7-methoxy-8-(3-((**R**)-7-methoxy-2-(4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)-3-methylbutanamide (**27**)

Excess piperidine was added (0.1 mL, 1 mmol) to a solution of PBD **26** (36.4 mg, 0.03 mmol) in DMF (0.9 mL). The mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 20 min, at which point the reaction had gone to completion (as monitored by LC/MS). The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL) and the organic phase was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (3 x 50 mL) until complete piperidine removal. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford crude product **27** which was used as such in the next step. LC/MS 2.20 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 964 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 5%).

(e) 6-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)-N-((**S**)-1-(((**S**)-1-((4-((**S**)-7-methoxy-8-(3-(((**S**)-7-methoxy-2-(4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)phenyl)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)hexanamide (**28**)

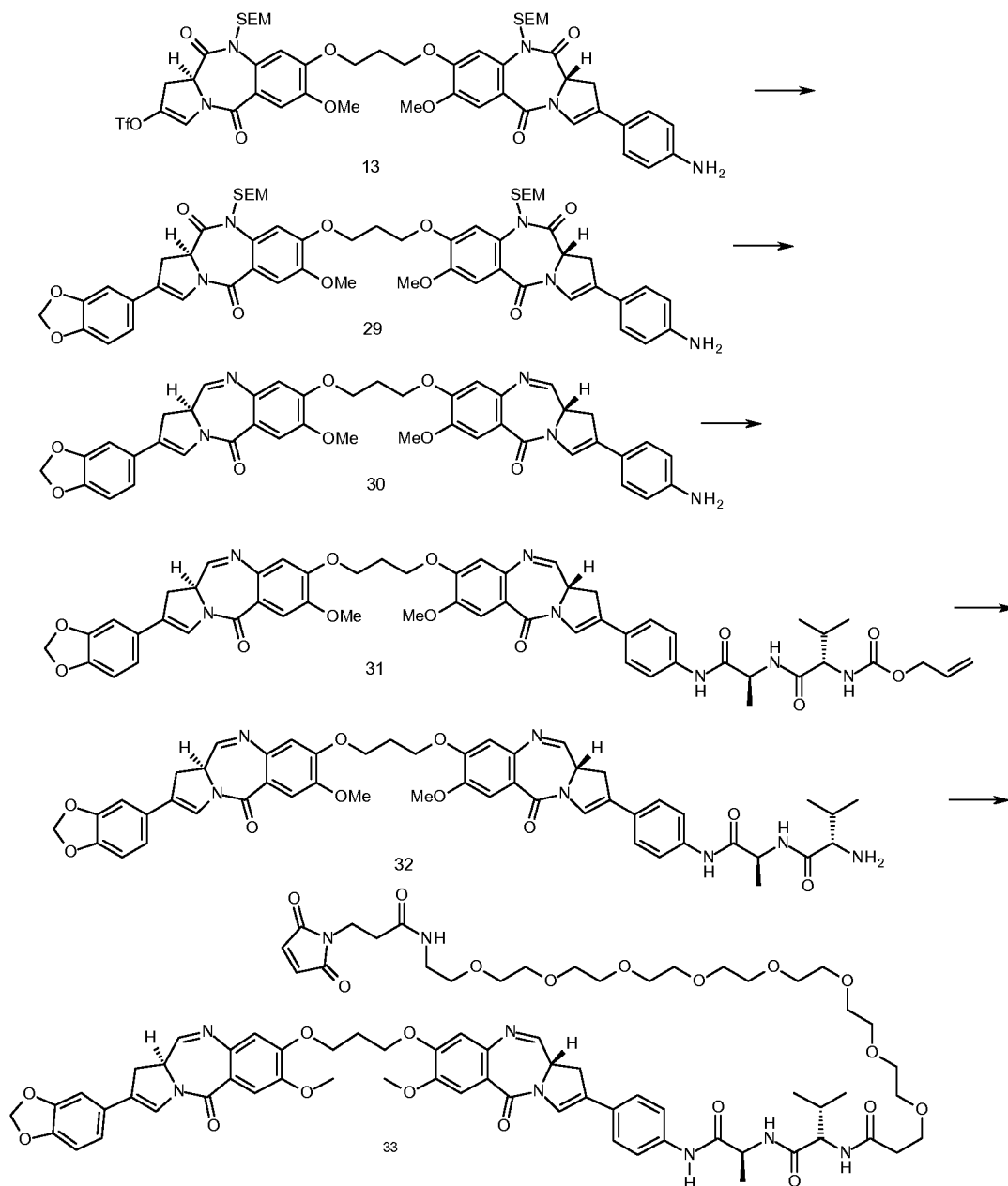
EDCI hydrochloride (4.7 mg, 0.03 mmol) was added to a suspension of 6-maleimidohexanoic acid (6.5 mg, 0.03 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL) under argon atmosphere. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature before PBD **27** (34 mg, crude) was added. Stirring was maintained until the reaction was complete (6 hours). The reaction was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the organic phase was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and brine before being dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The product was purified by careful silica gel chromatography (slow elution starting with 100% CHCl<sub>3</sub> up to 9:1 CHCl<sub>3</sub>/MeOH) followed by reverse phase chromatography to remove unreacted maleimide-PEG<sub>8</sub>-acid. The product **28** was isolated in 41% over two steps (14.6 mg). LC/MS 2.40 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1157 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 5%)



Example 4 – alternative synthesis of compound **25**

PBD-triflate **21** (469 mg, 0.323 mmol), boronic pinacol ester (146.5 mg, 0.484 mmol) and  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  (157 mg, 1.48 mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of toluene/MeOH/ $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , 2:1:1 (10  
5 mL). The reaction flask was purged with argon three times before *tetrakis*(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (7.41 mg, 0.0064 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture heated to 30°C overnight. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was taken up in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organics were washed with brine (100 mL), dried with  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and the volatiles removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by silica gel column chromatography ( $\text{CHCl}_3$  100% to  $\text{CHCl}_3/\text{MeOH}$  95%:5%) to afford pure **25** in 33% yield (885 mg). LC/MS 3.27 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 1478 ( $[\text{M} + \text{H}]^+$ , 100%).  
10

## Example 5



(a) (S)-2-(4-Aminophenyl)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepine-5,11(10H,11aH)-dione (**29**)

3, 4-(Methylenedioxy)phenyl boronic acid (356 mg, 2.1 mmol, 1.3 equiv.), TEA (1.8 mL, 12.9 mmol, 8 equiv.) and triflate/aniline **13** (1.75 g, 1.7 mmol, 1 equiv.) were dissolved in a mixture of ethanol (7 mL), toluene (13 mL) and water (2 mL) under an Ar atmosphere. The reaction mixture was evacuated and flushed with Ar 3 times, before addition of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (114 mg, 0.1 mmol, 0.06 equiv.). The flask was

again evacuated and flushed with Ar 3 times and heated in a microwave at 80°C for 8 minutes with 30 seconds pre-stirring time. Analysis by TLC (80:20 v/v ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (50 mL) and washed with water (50 mL). The organic layer was dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (60:40 to 20:80 v/v hexane/ ethyl acetate) afforded the product **29** as a yellow solid (1.21 g, 71%). LC/MS (3.92 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1032.44 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 100).

10 (b) (S)-2-(4-Aminophenyl)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-5(11aH)-one (**30**)

SEM dilactam **29** (0.25 g, 0.24 mmol, 1 equiv.) was dissolved in THF (8 mL) and cooled to -78°C under an Ar atmosphere. Super-Hydride® (0.6 mL, 1 M in THF, 2.5 equiv.) was added drop wise over 5 minutes while monitoring the temperature. After 20 minutes a small sample was taken and worked-up for LCMS analysis. Water (50 mL) was added, the cold bath was removed and the solution washed with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The organic layer was extracted and washed with brine (60 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. The crude product was dissolved in EtOH (15 mL), CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (7.5 mL) and water (2.5 mL) and enough silica gel was added until it was a thick suspension. After 5 days stirring, it was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (9:1) (100 mL) until product ceased to be eluted. The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 50 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (CHCl<sub>3</sub> with 1% to 4% MeOH gradient) afforded the product **30** as a yellow solid (94 mg, 53%). LC/MS (2.53 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 739.64 ([*M*]<sup>+</sup>, 70).

30 (c) Allyl ((S)-1-(((S)-1-((4-(((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**31**)

Under an Ar atmosphere, Alanine-Valine-Alloc (180 mg, 0.66 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) was stirred with EEDQ (163 mg, 0.66 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (21 mL) and methanol (1 mL) for 1 hour. The PBD **30** (407 mg, 0.55 mmol, 1 equiv.) was dissolved in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (21 mL) and methanol (1 mL) and added to the reaction. LC/MS after 5 days stirring at room temperature showed majority product formation. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* before purification by column chromatography (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> with 1% to 6% MeOH gradient) to

yield the product **31** as a yellow solid (184 mg, 34%). LC/MS (2.95 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 994.95 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 60).

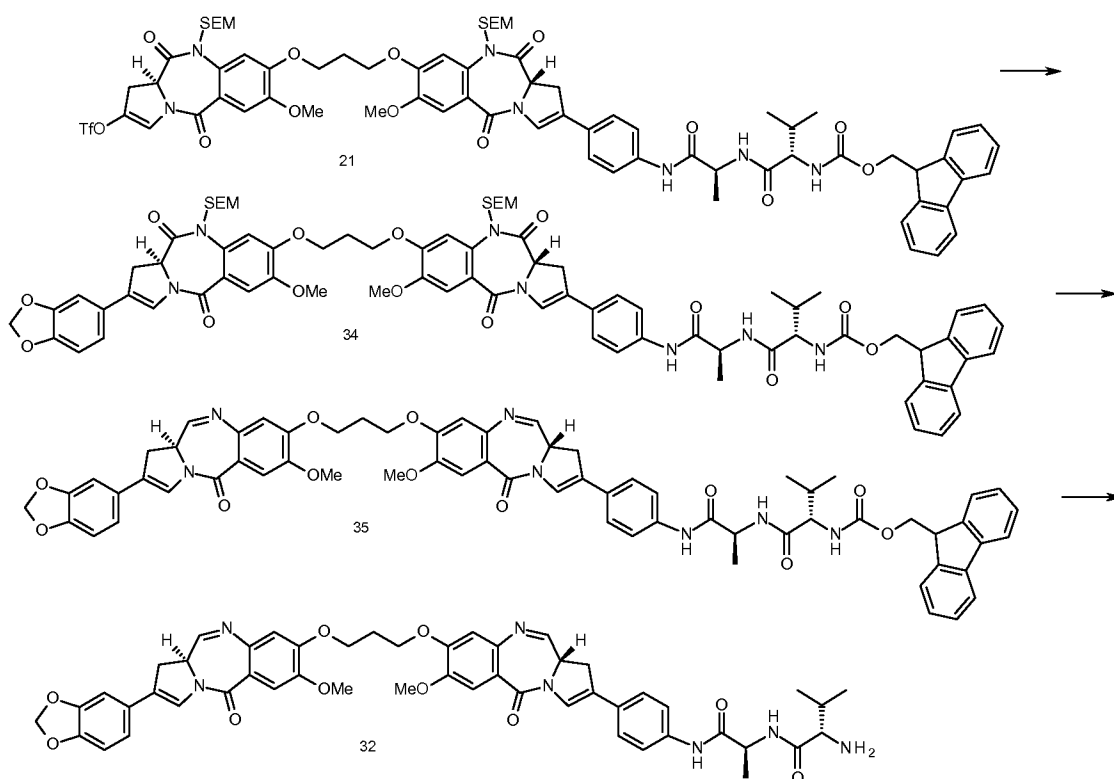
(d) (S)-2-Amino-N-((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)-3-methylbutanamide (**32**)

The imine **31** (100 mg, 0.1 mmol, 1 equiv.) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (10 mL) (with the aid of one drop of methanol to aid dissolution) under an Ar atmosphere. Pyrrolidine (30 μL, 0.15 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) was added drop wise before the flask was evacuated and flushed with Ar three times. Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (7 mg, 6 μmol, 0.06 equiv.) was added and the flask was evacuated and flushed with Ar three times. LC/MS analysis after 1 hour indicated product formation and complete loss of starting material. Et<sub>2</sub>O (60 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and it was left to stir until all the product had crashed out of solution. The precipitate was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed twice with Et<sub>2</sub>O (2 x 20 mL). The collection flask was replaced and the isolated solid was dissolved and washed through the sinter with CHCl<sub>3</sub> (100 mL). The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to afford the crude product **32** as a yellow solid which was used directly in the next step. LC/MS (1.14 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 910.40 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 67).

(e) N-((S)-1-((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(Benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)-1-(3-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)propanamido)-3,6,9,12,15,18,21,24-octaosaheptacosan-27-amide (**33**)

The imine **32** (92 mg, 0.1 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (6 mL) with one drop of anhydrous MeOH to aid dissolution. Maleimide-PEG<sub>8</sub>-acid (53 mg, 0.09 mmol, 1 equiv.) was added followed by EEDQ (33 mg, 0.14 mmol, 1.5 equiv.). This was left to stir vigorously at room temperature under Ar for 4 days until LC/MS analysis showed majority product formation. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the crude product was partially purified by silica gel column chromatography (CHCl<sub>3</sub> with 1% to 10% MeOH gradient) yielding **33** (81mg). The material was purified further by preparative HPLC to give **33** as a yellow solid (26.3 mg, 18%). Fast Formic run: LC/MS (1.39 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1485.00 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 64).

## Example 6



(a) 9H-Fluoren-9-yl)methyl ((S)-1-(((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5,11-dioxo-10-((2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy)methyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**34**)

The triflate **21** (0.5 g, 0.35 mmol, 1 equiv.), 3,4-(methylenedioxy)phenyl boronic acid (75 mg, 0.45 mmol, 1.3 equiv.) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.17 g, 1.6 mmol, 4.5 equiv.) were dissolved in toluene (11 mL), EtOH (5.5 mL) and water (5.5 mL) under an Ar atmosphere. The flask was evacuated and flushed with Ar three times. Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (24 mg, 0.02 mmol, 0.06 equiv.) was added and again the flask was evacuated and flushed with Ar three times. This was heated to 30°C and left stirring overnight. Analysis by LC/MS showed complete loss of starting material. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue dissolved in water (60 mL) before washing with ethyl acetate (60 mL x 3). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (50 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Purification by column chromatography (50:50 to 25:75 v/v hexane/ ethyl acetate) afforded the product **34** as a yellow solid (310 mg, 64%). LC/MS (1.44 min (ES<sup>-</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1423.35 ([M - H]<sup>-</sup>, 79).

(b) (9H-Fluoren-9-yl)methyl ((S)-1-(((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**35**)

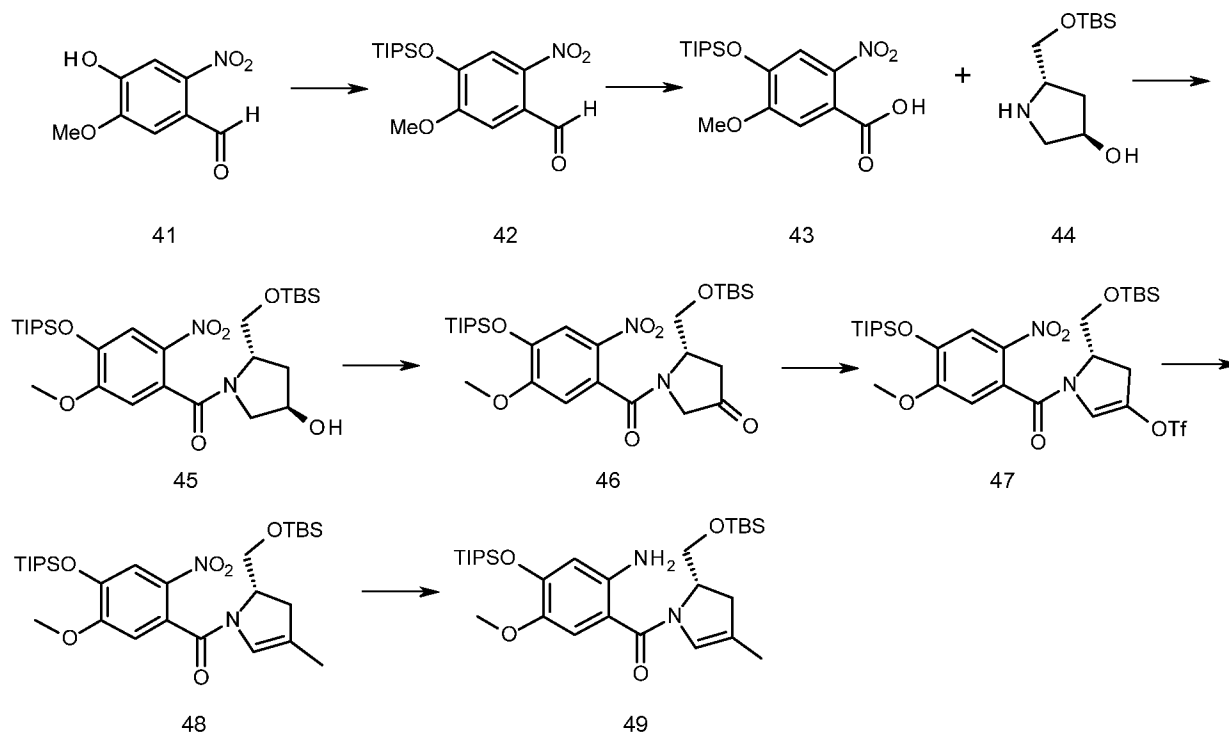
5 SEM dilactam **34** (0.31 g, 0.22 mmol, 1 equiv.) was dissolved in THF (10 mL) and cooled to -78°C under an Ar atmosphere. Super-Hydride® (0.5 mL, 1 M in THF, 2.5 equiv.) was added drop wise over 5 minutes while monitoring the temperature. After 30 minutes a small sample was taken and worked-up for LC/MS analysis. Water (50 mL) was added, the cold bath was removed and the solution washed with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The organic layer was  
10 extracted and washed with brine (60 mL), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. The crude product was dissolved in EtOH (13.2 mL), CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (6.6 mL) and water (2.2 mL) and enough silica gel was added until it was a thick suspension. After 5 days stirring, it was filtered through a sintered funnel and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/MeOH (9:1) (100 mL) until product ceased to be eluted. The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 50 mL),  
15 dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Purification by silica gel column chromatography (CHCl<sub>3</sub> with 1% to 4% MeOH gradient) afforded the pure product **35** as a yellow solid (185 mg, 75%). LC/MS (1.70 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1132.85 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 60).

20 (c) (S)-2-Amino-N-((S)-1-((4-((S)-8-(3-(((S)-2-(benzo[d][1,3]dioxol-5-yl)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-5,11a-dihydro-1H-pyrrolo[2,1-c][1,4]benzodiazepin-2-yl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)-3-methylbutanamide (**32**)

The imine **35** (82 mg, 0.07 mmol, 1 equiv.) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL) before piperidine  
25 (0.2 mL, 2 mmol, excess) was added slowly. This solution was left to stir at room temperature for 20 minutes until LC/MS analysis showed complete consumption of starting material. The reaction mixture was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL), washed with water (50 mL x 4), dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed *in vacuo*. The product **33** was used without further purification in the next step. LC/MS (1.15 min (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* (relative intensity)  
30 910.60 ([*M* + H]<sup>+</sup>, 58).

**Example 7**

(i) (S)-(2-amino-5-methoxy-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)(2-(((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)methanone (49)



5

(a) *5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)benzaldehyde (42)*

Neat triisopropylsilylchloride (56.4 mL, 262 mmol) was added to a mixture of imidazole (48.7 g, 715.23 mmol) and 4-hydroxy-5-methoxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde **41** (47 g, 238 mmol) (ground together). The mixture was heated until the phenol and imidazole melted and went into solution (100 °C). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 15 minutes and was then allowed to cool, whereupon a solid was observed to form at the bottom of the flask (imidazole chloride). The reaction mixture was diluted with 5% EtOAc/ hexanes and loaded directly onto silica gel and the pad was eluted with 5% EtOAc/ hexanes, followed by 10% EtOAc/hexanes (due to the low excess, very little unreacted TIPSCI was found in the product). The desired product was eluted with 5 % ethyl acetate in hexane. Excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure, followed by drying under high vacuum to afford a crystalline light sensitive solid (74.4 g, 88 %). Purity satisfactory by LC/MS (4.22 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 353.88 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100));  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  10.43 (s, 1H), 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.40 (s, 1H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 1.35 – 1.24 (m, 3H), 1.10 (m, 18H).

20

(b) *5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)benzoic acid (43)*

A solution of sodium chlorite (47.3 g, 523 mmol, 80 % technical grade) and sodium dihydrogenphosphate monobasic (35.2 g, 293 mmol) ( $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ ) in water (800 mL) was added to a solution of compound **2** (74 g, 209 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (500 mL) at room temperature. Hydrogen peroxide (60 % w/w, 140 mL, 2.93 mol) was immediately added to the vigorously stirred biphasic mixture. The reaction mixture evolved gas (oxygen), the starting material dissolved and the temperature of the reaction mixture rose to 45°C. After 30 minutes LC/MS revealed that the reaction was complete. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath and hydrochloric acid (1 M) was added to lower the pH to 3 (this step was found unnecessary in many instances, as the pH at the end of the reaction is already acidic; please check the pH before extraction). The reaction mixture was then extracted with ethyl acetate (1 L) and the organic phases washed with brine (2 x 100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. The organic phase was filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the product **43** in quantitative yield as a yellow solid. LC/MS (3.93 min (ES-)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 367.74 ( $[M - H]^-$ , 100));  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.36 (s, 1H), 7.24 (s, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 1.34 – 1.22 (m, 3H), 1.10 (m, 18H).

(c) *((2S,4R)-2-(((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-hydroxypyrrolidin-1-yl)(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)methanone (45)*

DCC (29.2 g, 141 mmol, 1.2 eq) was added to a solution of acid **3** (43.5 g, 117.8 mmol, 1eq), and hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (19.8 g, 129.6 mmol, 1.1 eq) in dichloromethane (200 mL) at 0 °C. The cold bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to proceed for 30 mins at room temperature, at which time a solution of (2S,4R)-2-*t*-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-4-hydroxypyrrolidine **44** (30 g, 129.6 mmol, 1.1 eq) and triethylamine (24.66 mL, 176 mmol, 1.5 eq) in dichloromethane (100 mL) was added rapidly at -10 °C under argon (on large scale, the addition time could be shortened by cooling the reaction mixture even further). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 40 minutes to 1 hour and monitored by LC/MS and TLC (EtOAc). The solids were removed by filtration over celite and the organic phase was washed with cold aqueous 0.1 M HCl until the pH was measured at 4 or 5. The organic phase was then washed with water, followed by saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; gradient 40/60 ethyl acetate/hexane to 80/20 ethyl acetate/ hexane). Excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the pure product **45**, (45.5 g of pure product 66%, and 17 g of slightly impure product, 90% in total). LC/MS 4.43 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 582.92



( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.66 (s, 1H), 6.74 (s, 1H), 4.54 (s, 1H), 4.40 (s, 1H), 4.13 (s, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.77 (d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz, 1H), 3.36 (dd,  $J = 11.3, 4.5$  Hz, 1H), 3.14 – 3.02 (m, 1H), 2.38 – 2.28 (m, 1H), 2.10 (ddd,  $J = 13.3, 8.4, 2.2$  Hz, 1H), 1.36 – 1.19 (m, 3H), 1.15 – 1.05 (m, 18H), 0.91 (s, 9H), 0.17 – 0.05 (m, 6H), (presence of rotamers).

5

(d) (S)-5-(((tert-butyl dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-1-(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)benzoyl)pyrrolidin-3-one (**46**)

TCCA (8.82 g, 40 mmol, 0.7 eq) was added to a stirred solution of **45** (31.7 g, 54 mmol, 1 eq) and TEMPO (0.85 g, 5.4 mmol, 0.1 eq) in dry dichloromethane (250 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was vigorously stirred for 20 minutes, at which point TLC (50/50 ethyl acetate/hexane) revealed complete consumption of the starting material. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate washed with aqueous saturated sodium bicarbonate (100 mL), sodium thiosulphate (9 g in 300 mL), brine (100 mL) and dried over magnesium sulphate. Rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded product **46** in quantitative yield. LC/MS 4.52 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 581.08 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.78 – 7.60 (m, 1H), 6.85 – 6.62 (m, 1H), 4.94 (dd,  $J = 30.8, 7.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.50 – 4.16 (m, 1H), 3.99 – 3.82 (m, 3H), 3.80 – 3.34 (m, 3H), 2.92 – 2.17 (m, 2H), 1.40 – 1.18 (m, 3H), 1.11 (t,  $J = 6.2$  Hz, 18H), 0.97 – 0.75 (m, 9H), 0.15 – -0.06 (m, 6H), (presence of rotamers).

20

(e) (S)-5-(((tert-butyl dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-1-(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)benzoyl)-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (**47**)

Triflic anhydride (27.7 mL, 46.4 g, 165 mmol, 3 eq) was injected (temperature controlled) to a vigorously stirred suspension of ketone **46** (31.9 g, 55 mmol, 1 eq) in dry dichloromethane (900 mL) in the presence of 2,6-lutidine (25.6 mL, 23.5 g, 220 mmol, 4 eq, dried over sieves) at -50 °C (acetone/dry ice bath). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 1.5 hours when LC/MS, following a mini work-up (water/dichloromethane), revealed the reaction to be complete. Water was added to the still cold reaction mixture and the organic layer was separated and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine and magnesium sulphate. The organic phase was filtered and excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; 10/90 v/v ethyl acetate/hexane), removal of excess eluent afforded the product **47** (37.6 g, 96 %) LC/MS, method 2, 4.32 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 712.89 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.71 (s, 1H), 6.75 (s, 1H), 6.05 (d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.78 (dd,  $J = 9.8, 5.5$  Hz, 1H), 4.15 – 3.75 (m, 5H), 3.17 (ddd,  $J = 16.2, 10.4, 2.3$  Hz, 1H), 2.99 (ddd,  $J =$

35

16.3, 4.0, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 1.45 – 1.19 (m, 3H), 1.15 – 1.08 (m, 18H), 1.05 (s, 6H), 0.95 – 0.87 (m, 9H), 0.15 – 0.08 (m, 6H).

(f) (S)-(2-(((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)methanone (**48**)

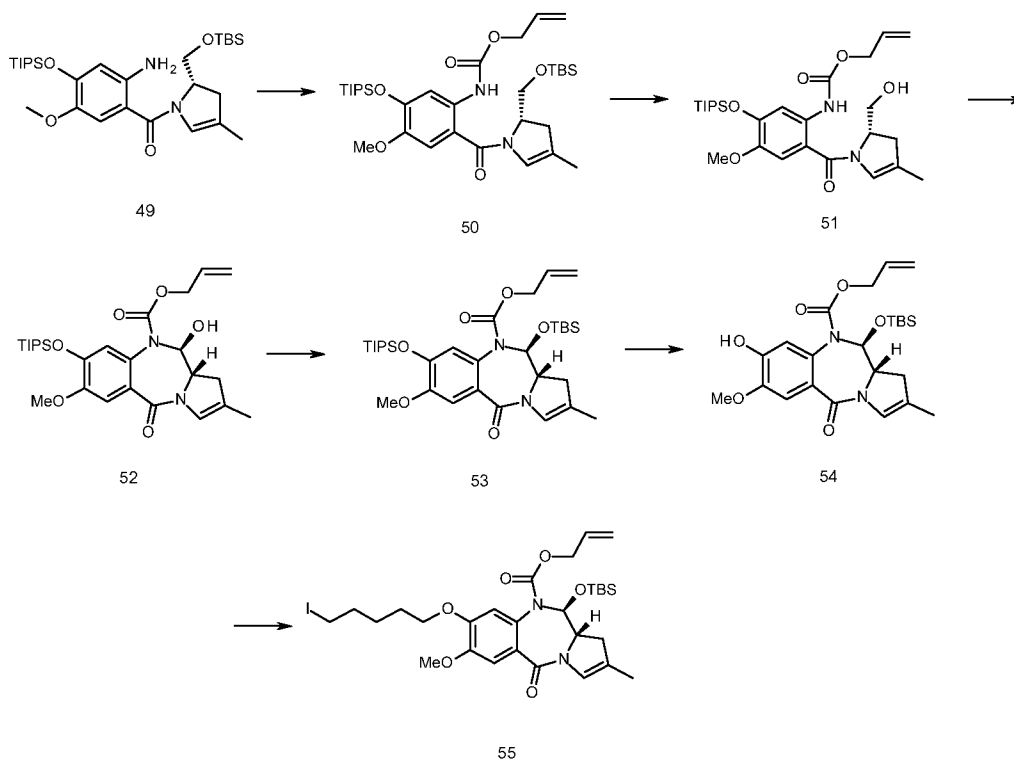
5 Triphenylarsine (1.71 g, 5.60 mmol, 0.4 eq) was added to a mixture of triflate **47** (10.00 g, 14 mmol, 1eq), methylboronic acid (2.94 g, 49.1 mmol, 3.5 eq), silver oxide (13 g, 56 mmol, 4 eq) and potassium phosphate tribasic (17.8 g, 84 mmol, 6 eq) in dry dioxane (80 mL) under an argon atmosphere. The reaction was flushed with argon 3 times and  
10 bis(benzonitrile)palladium(II) chloride (540 mg, 1.40 mmol, 0.1 eq) was added. The reaction was flushed with argon 3 more times before being warmed instantaneously to 110°C (the drysyn heating block was previously warmed to 110°C prior addition of the flask). After 10 mins the reaction was cooled to room temperature and filtered through a pad celite. The solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue  
15 was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; 10 % ethyl acetate / hexane). Pure fractions were collected and combined, and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product **48** (4.5 g, 55 %). LC/MS, 4.27 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 579.18 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.70 (s, 1H), 6.77 (s, 1H), 5.51 (d,  $J = 1.7$  Hz, 1H), 4.77 – 4.59 (m, 1H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 2.92 – 2.65 (m, 1H), 2.55 (d,  $J = 14.8$  Hz, 1H), 1.62 (d,  $J = 1.1$  Hz, 3H), 1.40 – 1.18 (m, 3H), 1.11 (s, 9H),  
20 1.10 (s, 9H), 0.90 (s, 9H), 0.11 (d,  $J = 2.3$  Hz, 6H).

(g) (S)-(2-amino-5-methoxy-4-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)(2-(((tert-butyl)dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)methanone (**49**)

25 Zinc powder (28 g, 430 mmol, 37 eq) was added to a solution of compound **48** (6.7 g, 11.58 mmol) in 5% formic acid in ethanol v/v (70 mL) at around 15°C. The resulting exotherm was controlled using an ice bath to maintain the temperature of the reaction mixture below 30°C. After 30 minutes the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of celite. The filtrate was diluted with ethyl acetate and the organic phase was washed with water, saturated aqueous  
30 sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; 10 % ethyl acetate in hexane). The pure fractions were collected and combined and excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the product **49** (5.1 g, 80  
35 %). LC/MS, 4.23 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 550.21 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.28 (s, 1H), 6.67 (s, 1H), 6.19 (s, 1H), 4.64 – 4.53 (m,  $J = 4.1$  Hz, 1H), 4.17

(s, 1H), 3.87 (s, 1H), 3.77 – 3.69 (m, 1H), 3.66 (s, 3H), 2.71 – 2.60 (m, 1H), 2.53 – 2.43 (m, 1H), 2.04 – 1.97 (m,  $J = 11.9$  Hz, 1H), 1.62 (s, 3H), 1.26 – 1.13 (m, 3H), 1.08 – 0.99 (m, 18H), 0.82 (s, 9H), 0.03 – -0.03 (m,  $J = 6.2$  Hz, 6H).

5 (ii) (11S,11aS)-allyl 11-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-8-((5-iodopentyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate



(a) *(S)*-allyl (2-(2-(((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)carbamate (**50**)

- 10 Allyl chloroformate (0.30 mL, 3.00 mmol, 1.1 eq) was added to a solution of amine **49** (1.5 g, 2.73 mmol) in the presence of dry pyridine (0.48 mL, 6.00 mmol, 2.2 eq) in dry dichloromethane (20 mL) at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  (acetone/dry ice bath). After 30 minutes, the bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and saturated aqueous copper sulphate was
- 15 added. The organic layer was then washed sequentially with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess solvent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the product **50** which was used directly in the next reaction. LC/MS, 4.45 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 632.91 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100)

(b) *(S)*-allyl (2-(2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)carbamate (**51**)

The crude **50** was dissolved in a 7:1:1:2 mixture of acetic acid/methanol/tetrahydrofuran/water (28:4:4:8 mL) and allowed to stir at room temperature.

5 After 3 hours, complete disappearance of starting material was observed by LC/MS. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed sequentially with water (2 x 500 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (200 mL) and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess ethyl acetate removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel, 25% ethyl acetate in hexane). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the desired product **51** (1 g, 71 %). LC/MS, 3.70 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 519.13 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 95);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.34 (s, 1H), 7.69 (s, 1H), 6.78 (s, 1H), 6.15 (s, 1H), 5.95 (ddt,  $J = 17.2, 10.5, 5.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.33 (dq,  $J = 17.2, 1.5$  Hz, 1H), 5.23 (ddd,  $J = 10.4, 2.6, 1.3$  Hz, 1H), 4.73 (tt,  $J = 7.8, 4.8$  Hz, 1H), 4.63 (dt,  $J = 5.7, 1.4$  Hz, 2H), 4.54 (s, 1H), 3.89 – 3.70 (m, 5H), 2.87 (dd,  $J = 16.5, 10.5$  Hz, 1H), 2.19 (dd,  $J = 16.8, 4.6$  Hz, 1H), 1.70 (d,  $J = 1.3$  Hz, 3H), 1.38 – 1.23 (m, 3H), 1.12 (s, 10H), 1.10 (s, 8H).

(c) *(11S,11aS)*-allyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-8-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**52**)

Dimethyl sulphoxide (0.35 mL, 4.83 mmol, 2.5 eq) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.2 mL, 2.32 mmol, 1.2 eq) in dry dichloromethane (10 mL) at  $-78^\circ\text{C}$  (dry ice /acetone bath) under an atmosphere of argon. After 10 minutes a solution of **51** (1 g, 1.93 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (8 mL) was added slowly with the temperature still at  $-78^\circ\text{C}$ .

25 After 15 min triethylamine (1.35 mL, dried over 4Å molecular sieves, 9.65 mmol, 5 eq) was added dropwise and the dry ice/acetone bath was removed. The reaction mixture was allowed to reach room temperature and was extracted with cold hydrochloric acid (0.1 M), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess dichloromethane was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford product **52** (658 mg, 66%). LC/MS, 3.52 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 517.14 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.20 (s, 1H), 6.75 – 6.63 (m,  $J = 8.8, 4.0$  Hz, 2H), 5.89 – 5.64 (m,  $J = 9.6, 4.1$  Hz, 2H), 5.23 – 5.03 (m, 2H), 4.68 – 4.38 (m, 2H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 3.83 – 3.77 (m, 1H), 3.40 (s, 1H), 3.05 – 2.83 (m, 1H), 2.59 (d,  $J = 17.1$  Hz, 1H), 1.78 (d,  $J = 1.3$  Hz, 3H), 1.33 – 1.16 (m, 3H), 1.09 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 9H), 1.07 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 9H).

(d) (11S,11aS)-allyl 11-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-8-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**53**)

Tert-butyldimethylsilyltriflate (0.70 mL, 3.00 mmol, 3 eq) was added to a solution of  
5 compound **52** (520 mg, 1.00 mmol) and 2,6-lutidine (0.46 mL, 4.00 mmol, 4 eq) in dry  
dichloromethane (40 mL) at 0°C under argon. After 10 min, the cold bath was removed and  
the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was  
extracted with water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase  
was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess was removed by rotary evaporation  
10 under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column  
chromatography (silica gel; gradient, 10 % ethyl acetate in hexane to 20 % ethyl acetate in  
hexane). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by  
rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give the product **53** (540 mg, 85 %). LC/MS,  
4.42 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 653.14 ( $[M + Na]^+$ , 100);  $^1H$  NMR (400 MHz,  $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$   
15 7.20 (s, 1H), 6.71 – 6.64 (m, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 2H), 5.83 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 5.80 – 5.68 (m, *J* = 5.9  
Hz, 1H), 5.14 – 5.06 (m, 2H), 4.58 (dd, *J* = 13.2, 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.36 (dd, *J* = 13.3, 5.5 Hz, 1H),  
3.84 (s, 3H), 3.71 (td, *J* = 10.1, 3.8 Hz, 1H), 2.91 (dd, *J* = 16.9, 10.3 Hz, 1H), 2.36 (d, *J* =  
16.8 Hz, 1H), 1.75 (s, 3H), 1.31 – 1.16 (m, 3H), 1.12 – 1.01 (m, *J* = 7.4, 2.1 Hz, 18H), 0.89 –  
0.81 (m, 9H), 0.25 (s, 3H), 0.19 (s, 3H).

20

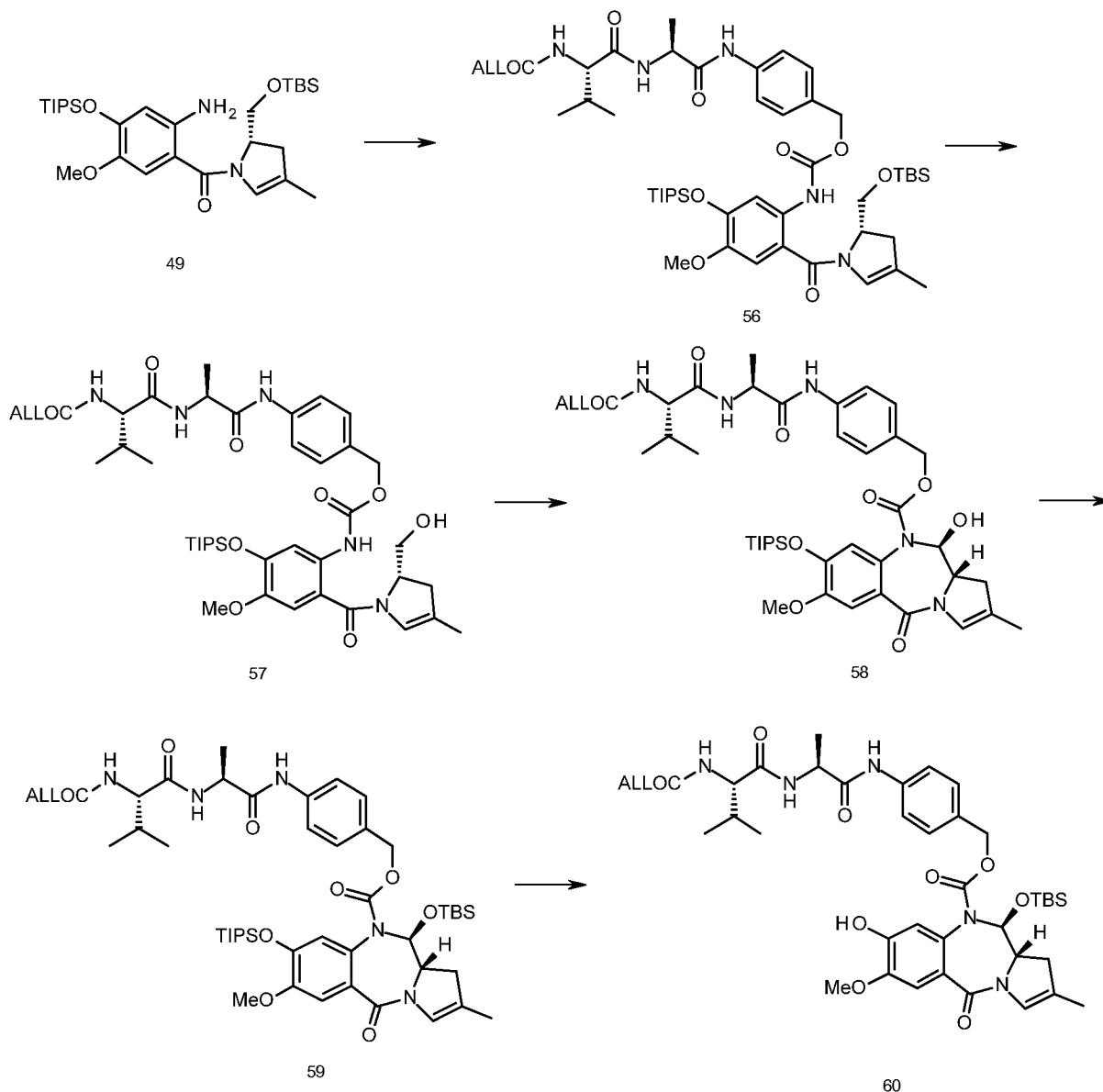
(e) (11S,11aS)-allyl 11-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**54**)

Lithium acetate (87 mg, 0.85 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **53** (540 mg, 0.85  
mmol) in wet dimethylformamide (6 mL, 50:1 DMF/water). After 4 hours, the reaction was  
25 complete and the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (25 mL) and washed with  
aqueous citric acid solution (pH ~ 3), water and brine. The organic layer was dried over  
magnesium sulphate filtered and excess ethyl acetate was removed by rotary evaporation  
under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column  
chromatography (silica gel; gradient, 25% to 75% ethyl acetate in hexane). Pure fractions  
30 were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under  
reduced pressure to give the product **54** (400 mg, quantitative). LC/MS, (3.33 min (ES+) *m/z*  
(relative intensity) 475.26 ( $[M+H]^+$ , 100).

(f) (11*S*,11*aS*)-allyl 11-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-8-((5-iodopentyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**55**)

Diiodopentane (0.63 mL, 4.21 mmol, 5 eq) and potassium carbonate (116 mg, 0.84 mmol, 1  
5 eq) were added to a solution of phenol **54** (400 mg, 0.84 mmol) in acetone (4 mL, dried over  
molecular sieves). The reaction mixture was then warmed to 60°C and stirred for 6 hours.  
Acetone was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue  
was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; 50/50, v/v, hexane/ethyl acetate,).  
Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed to provide **55**  
10 in 90% yield. LC/MS, 3.90 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 670.91 ([M]<sup>+</sup>, 100). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400  
MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.23 (s, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H), 5.87 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.83 – 5.68  
(m, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 1H), 5.15 – 5.01 (m, 2H), 4.67 – 4.58 (m, 1H), 4.45 – 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.04 –  
3.93 (m, 2H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.73 (td, *J* = 10.0, 3.8 Hz, 1H), 3.25 – 3.14 (m, *J* = 8.5, 7.0 Hz,  
2H), 2.92 (dd, *J* = 16.8, 10.3 Hz, 1H), 2.38 (d, *J* = 16.8 Hz, 1H), 1.95 – 1.81 (m, 4H), 1.77 (s,  
15 3H), 1.64 – 1.49 (m, 2H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.25 (s, 3H), 0.23 (s, 3H).

(iii) (11S,11aS)-4-(2-(1-((1-(allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl 11-((tert-butyl dimethylsilyl)oxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (70)



5

(a) *Allyl 3-(2-(2-(4-(((2-((S)-2-(((tert-butyl dimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)carbamoyl)oxy)methyl)phenyl)hydrazinyl)propanamido)-4-methyl-2-oxopentanoate (56)*

- 10 Triethylamine (2.23 mL, 18.04 mmol, 2.2 eq) was added to a stirred solution of the amine **49** (4 g, 8.20 mmol) and triphosgene (778 mg, 2.95 mmol, 0.36 eq) in dry tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) at 5 °C (ice bath). The progress of the isocyanate reaction was monitored by periodically removing aliquots from the reaction mixture and quenching with methanol and

performing LC/MS analysis. Once the isocyanate formation was complete a solution of the alloc-Val-Ala-PABOH (4.12 g, 12.30 mmol, 1.5 eq) and triethylamine (1.52 mL, 12.30 mmol, 1.5 eq) in dry tetrahydrofuran (40 mL) was rapidly added by injection to the freshly prepared isocyanate. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 40 °C for 4 hours. Excess solvent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; gradient, 1 % methanol to 5% methanol in dichloromethane). (Alternative chromatography conditions using EtOAc and Hexane have also been successful). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give the product **56** (3.9 g, 50%). LC/MS, 4.23 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 952.36 ( $[M + H]^+$ , 100);  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.62 (br s, 1H), 8.46 (s, 1H), 7.77 (br s, 1H), 7.53 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.32 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 2H), 6.76 (s, 1H), 6.57 (d,  $J = 7.6$  Hz, 1H), 6.17 (s, 1H), 6.03 – 5.83 (m, 1H), 5.26 (dd,  $J = 33.8, 13.5$  Hz, 3H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 4.70 – 4.60 (m, 2H), 4.58 (dd,  $J = 5.7, 1.3$  Hz, 2H), 4.06 – 3.99 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 1H), 3.82 – 3.71 (m, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 2.79 – 2.64 (m, 1H), 2.54 (d,  $J = 12.9$  Hz, 1H), 2.16 (dq,  $J = 13.5, 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 1.67 (s, 3H), 1.46 (d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 3H), 1.35 – 1.24 (m, 3H), 1.12 (s, 9H), 1.10 (s, 9H), 0.97 (d,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 0.94 (d,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 0.87 (s, 9H), 0.07 – -0.02 (m, 6H).

(b) *Allyl 3-(2-(2-(4-(((2-((S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-methyl-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)carbamoyl)oxy)methyl)phenyl)hydrazinyl)propanamido)-4-methyl-2-oxopentanoate (57)*

The TBS ether **56** (1.32 g, 1.38 mmol) was dissolved in a 7:1:1:2 mixture of acetic acid/methanol/tetrahydrofuran/water (14:2:2:4 mL) and allowed to stir at room temperature. After 3 hours no more starting material was observed by LC/MS. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (25 mL) and washed sequentially with water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess ethyl acetate removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel, 2% methanol in dichloromethane). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to afford the desired product **57** (920 mg, 80%). LC/MS, 3.60 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 838.18 ( $[M+H]^+$ , 100).  $^1\text{H NMR}$  (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.55 (s, 1H), 8.35 (s, 1H), 7.68 (s, 1H), 7.52 (d,  $J = 8.1$  Hz, 2H), 7.31 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2H), 6.77 (s, 1H), 6.71 (d,  $J = 7.5$  Hz, 1H), 6.13 (s, 1H), 5.97 – 5.82 (m,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 1H), 5.41 – 5.15 (m, 3H), 5.10 (d,  $J = 3.5$  Hz, 2H), 4.76 – 4.42 (m, 5H), 4.03 (t,  $J = 6.6$  Hz, 1H), 3.77 (s, 5H), 2.84 (dd,  $J = 16.7, 10.4$  Hz, 1H), 2.26 – 2.08 (m, 2H),



1.68 (s, 3H), 1.44 (d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 3H), 1.30 (dt,  $J = 14.7, 7.4$  Hz, 3H), 1.12 (s, 9H), 1.10 (s, 9H), 0.96 (d,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H), 0.93 (d,  $J = 6.8$  Hz, 3H).

(c) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-(2-(1-((1-(allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-8-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**58**)

Dimethyl sulphoxide (0.2 mL, 2.75 mmol, 2.5 eq) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.11 mL, 1.32 mmol, 1.2 eq) in dry dichloromethane (7 mL) at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  (dry ice /acetone bath) under an atmosphere of argon. After 10 minutes a solution of **57** (920 mg, 1.10 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (5 mL) was added slowly with the temperature still at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$ . After 15 min triethylamine (0.77 mL, dried over 4Å molecular sieves, 5.50 mmol, 5 eq) was added dropwise and the dry ice/acetone bath was removed. The reaction mixture was allowed to reach room temperature and was extracted with cold hydrochloric acid (0.1 M), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess dichloromethane was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; gradient 2% methanol to 5 % methanol in dichloromethane). Pure fractions were collected and combined and removal of excess eluent by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure afforded the product **58** (550 mg, 60%). LC/MS, 3.43 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 836.01 ( $[\text{M}]^{+}$ , 100).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.39 (s, 1H), 7.52 – 7.40 (m, 2H), 7.21 – 7.08 (m,  $J = 11.5$  Hz, 2H), 6.67 (s, 1H), 6.60 – 6.47 (m,  $J = 7.4$  Hz, 1H), 5.97 – 5.83 (m, 1H), 5.79 – 5.66 (m, 1H), 5.38 – 4.90 (m, 6H), 4.68 – 4.52 (m,  $J = 18.4, 5.5$  Hz, 4H), 4.04 – 3.94 (m,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 1H), 3.87 – 3.76 (m, 5H), 3.00 – 2.88 (m, 1H), 2.66 – 2.49 (m, 2H), 2.21 – 2.08 (m, 2H), 1.76 (s, 3H), 1.45 (d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 3H), 1.09 – 0.98 (m,  $J = 8.9$  Hz, 18H), 0.96 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 3H), 0.93 (d,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 3H).

(d) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-(2-(1-((1-(Allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl 11-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-8-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**59**)

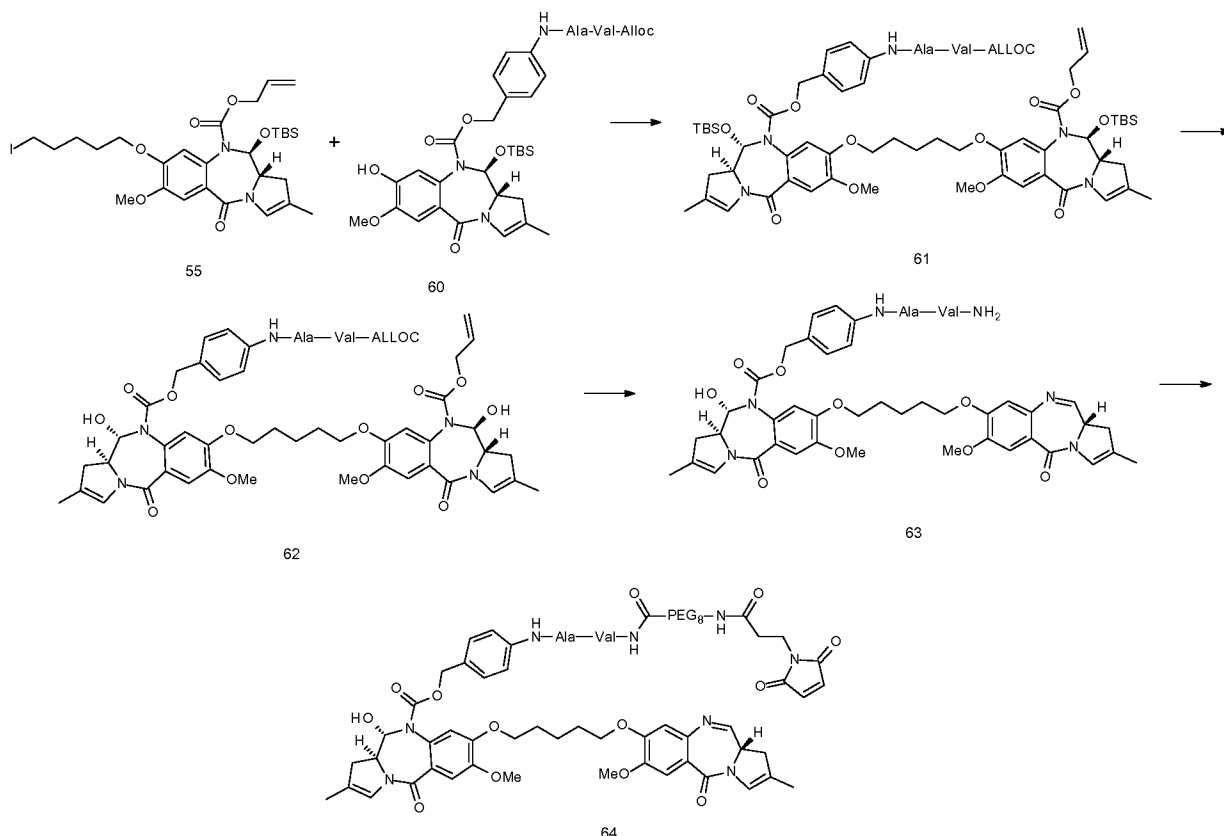
*Tert*-butyldimethylsilyltriflate (0.38 mL, 1.62 mmol, 3 eq) was added to a solution of compound **58** (450 mg, 0.54 mmol) and 2,6-lutidine (0.25 mL, 2.16 mmol, 4 eq) in dry dichloromethane (5 mL) at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  under argon. After 10 min, the cold bath was removed and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was extracted with water, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate, filtered and excess solvent was removed by rotary

evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; 50/50 v/v hexane/ethyl acetate). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give the product **59** (334 mg, 65%). LC/MS, 4.18 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 950.50 ( $[M]^+$ , 100).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.53 (s, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.44 (d,  $J = 7.6$  Hz, 2H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.08 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 2H), 6.72 – 6.61 (m,  $J = 8.9$  Hz, 2H), 6.16 (s, 1H), 5.97 – 5.79 (m,  $J = 24.4, 7.5$  Hz, 2H), 5.41 – 5.08 (m, 5H), 4.86 (d,  $J = 12.5$  Hz, 1H), 4.69 – 4.60 (m, 1H), 4.57 (s, 1H), 4.03 (t,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.74 (td,  $J = 9.6, 3.6$  Hz, 1H), 2.43 – 2.09 (m,  $J = 34.8, 19.4, 11.7$  Hz, 3H), 1.76 (s, 3H), 1.43 (d,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 3H), 1.30 – 1.21 (m, 3H), 0.97 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 3H), 0.92 (t,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 3H), 0.84 (s, 9H), 0.23 (s, 3H), 0.12 (s, 3H).

(e) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-(2-(1-((1-(Allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl 11-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**60**)

Lithium acetate (50 mg, 0.49 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **59** (470 mg, 0.49 mmol) in wet dimethylformamide (4 mL, 50:1 DMF/water). After 4 hours, the reaction was complete and the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with citric acid (pH ~ 3), water and brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess ethyl acetate was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column flash chromatography (silica gel; gradient, 50/50 to 25/75 v/v hexane/ethyl acetate). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give the product **60** (400 mg, quantitative). LC/MS, 3.32 min (ES+)  $m/z$  (relative intensity) 794.18 ( $[M+H]^+$ , 100).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (400 MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.53 (s, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.44 (d,  $J = 7.6$  Hz, 2H), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.08 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 2H), 6.72 – 6.61 (m,  $J = 8.9$  Hz, 2H), 6.16 (s, 1H), 5.97 – 5.79 (m,  $J = 24.4, 7.5$  Hz, 2H), 5.41 – 5.08 (m, 5H), 4.86 (d,  $J = 12.5$  Hz, 1H), 4.69 – 4.60 (m, 1H), 4.57 (s, 1H), 4.03 (t,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.74 (td,  $J = 9.6, 3.6$  Hz, 1H), 2.43 – 2.09 (m,  $J = 34.8, 19.4, 11.7$  Hz, 3H), 1.76 (s, 3H), 1.43 (d,  $J = 6.9$  Hz, 3H), 1.30 – 1.21 (m, 3H), 0.97 (d,  $J = 6.7$  Hz, 3H), 0.92 (t,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 3H), 0.84 (s, 9H), 0.23 (s, 3H), 0.12 (s, 3H).

- (iv) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-((2*S*,5*S*)-37-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrol-1-yl)-5-isopropyl-2-methyl-4,7,35-trioxo-10,13,16,19,22,25,28,31-octaoxa-3,6,34-triazaheptatriacontanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-((5-(((*S*)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-5,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**64**)



- (a) (11*S*)-allyl 8-(((5-(((11*S*)-10-(((4-(2-(1-((1-(allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl)oxy)carbonyl)-11-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-5,10,11,11*a*-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-11-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**61**))

Potassium carbonate (70 mg, 0.504 mmol, 1 eq) was added to a solution of **55** (370 mg, 0.552 mmol, 1.2 eq) and phenol **60** (400 mg, 0.504 mmol) in dry acetone (25 mL). The reaction was stirred 8 hours at 70°C. The LC/MS showed that all the starting material was not consumed, so the reaction was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature and stirred for an additional 2 hours the next day. Acetone was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; 80% ethyl acetate in hexane to 100% ethyl acetate). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced

pressure to give the product **61** (385 mg, 57%). LC/MS, 4.07 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1336.55 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 50).

(b) (11*S*)-allyl 8-((5-(((11*S*)-10-(((4-(2-(1-((1-(allyloxy)-4-methyl-1,2-dioxopentan-3-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl)oxy)carbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-5,10,11,11*a*-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**62**)

Tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride (1M, 0.34 mL, 0.34 mmol, 2 eq) was added to a solution of **61** (230 mg, 0.172 mmol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (3 mL). The starting material was totally consumed after 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and washed sequentially with water and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess ethyl acetate removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue **62** was used as a crude mixture for the next reaction. LC/MS, 2.87 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1108.11 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 100).

(c) (11*S*)-4-(2-(1-((1-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)hydrazinyl)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-((5-((7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-5,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**63**)

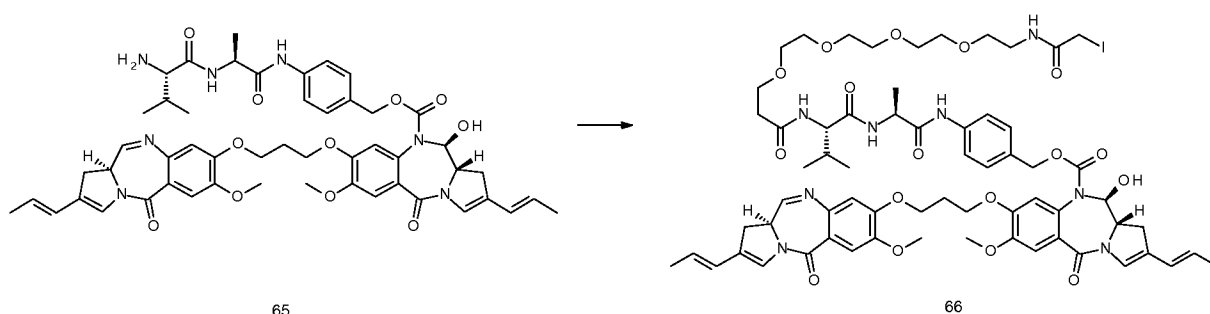
Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (12 mg, 0.01 mmol, 0.06 eq) was added to a solution of crude **62** (0.172 mmol) and pyrrolidine (36 μL, 0.43 mmol, 2.5 eq) in dry dichloromethane (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred 20 minutes and diluted with dichloromethane and washed sequentially with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess dichloromethane removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue **63** was used as a crude mixture for the next reaction. LC/MS, 2.38 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 922.16 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 40).

(d) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-((2*S*,5*S*)-37-(2,5-dioxo-2,5-dihydro-1*H*-pyrrol-1-yl)-5-isopropyl-2-methyl-4,7,35-trioxo-10,13,16,19,22,25,28,31-octaoxa-3,6,34-triazaheptatriacontanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-((5-(((*S*)-7-methoxy-2-methyl-5-oxo-5,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)pentyl)oxy)-2-methyl-5-oxo-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**64**)

1-ethyl-3-(3'-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDCI, 33 mg, 0.172 mmol) was added to a solution of crude **63** (0.172 mmol) and Mal-(PEG)<sub>8</sub>-acid (100 mg, 0.172 mmol) in dry

dichloromethane (10 mL). The reaction was stirred for 2 hours and the presence of starting material was no longer observed by LC/MS. The reaction was diluted with dichloromethane and washed sequentially with water and brine. The organic phase was dried over magnesium sulphate filtered and excess dichloromethane removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to flash column chromatography (silica gel; 100% chloroform to 10% methanol in chloroform). Pure fractions were collected and combined and excess eluent was removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give **64 (E)** (60 mg, 25% over 3 steps).

### 10 Example 8



Compound 65 is compound 79 of WO 2011/130598

15 *(11S)-4-(1-iodo-20-isopropyl-23-methyl-2,18,21-trioxo-6,9,12,15-tetraoxa-3,19,22-triazatetracosanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-(3-((7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-en-1-yl)-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yl)oxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-en-1-yl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (66)*

20 *N,N'*-diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC, 4.71  $\mu$ L, 0.0304 mmol) was added to a solution of amine **65** (0.0276 mmol) and Iodo-(PEG)<sub>4</sub>-acid (13.1 mg, 0.0304 mmol) in dry dichloromethane (0.8 mL). The reaction was stirred for 3 hours and the presence of starting material was no longer observed by LC/MS. The reaction mixture was directly loaded onto a thin-layer chromatography (TLC) plate and purified by prep-TLC (10% methanol in chloroform). Pure bands were scraped off the TLC plate, taken up in 10% methanol in chloroform, filtered and excess eluent removed by rotary evaporation under reduced pressure to give **66 (D)** (20.9 mg, 56%). LC/MS, method 2, 3.08 min (ES+) *m/z* (relative intensity) 1361.16 ([M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 100).

**General Experimental Methods for Example 9**

LCMS data were obtained using an Agilent 1200 series LC/MS with an Agilent 6110 quadrupole MS, with Electrospray ionisation. Mobile phase A - 0.1% Acetic acid in water. Mobile Phase B - 0.1% in acetonitrile. Flow rate of 1.00ml/min. Gradient from 5% B rising up to 95% B over 3 minutes, remaining at 95% B for 1 minute and then back down to 5% B over 6 seconds. The total run time is 5 minutes. Column: Phenomenex Gemini-NX 3 $\mu$ m C18, 30 x 2.00mm. Chromatograms based on UV detection at 254nm. Mass Spectra were achieved using the MS in positive mode. Proton NMR chemical shift values were measured on the delta scale at 400 MHz using a Bruker AV400. The following abbreviations have been used: s, singlet; d, doublet; t, triplet; q, quartet; m, multiplet; br, broad. Coupling constants are reported in Hz. Unless otherwise stated, column chromatography (by the flash procedure) were performed on Merck Kieselgel silica (Art. 9385). Mass spectroscopy (MS) data were collected using a Waters Micromass LCT instrument coupled to a Waters 2795 HPLC separations module. Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC) was performed on silica gel aluminium plates (Merck 60, F<sub>254</sub>). All other chemicals and solvents were purchased from Sigma-Aldrich or Fisher Scientific and were used as supplied without further purification.

Optical rotations were measured on an ADP 220 polarimeter (Bellingham Stanley Ltd.) and concentrations (*c*) are given in g/100mL. Melting points were measured using a digital melting point apparatus (Electrothermal). IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer Spectrum 1000 FT IR Spectrometer. <sup>1</sup>H and <sup>13</sup>C NMR spectra were acquired at 300 K using a Bruker Avance NMR spectrometer at 400 and 100 MHz, respectively. Chemical shifts are reported relative to TMS ( $\delta = 0.0$  ppm), and signals are designated as s (singlet), d (doublet), t (triplet), dt (double triplet), dd (doublet of doublets), ddd (double doublet of doublets) or m (multiplet), with coupling constants given in Hertz (Hz). Mass spectroscopy (MS) data were collected using a Waters Micromass ZQ instrument coupled to a Waters 2695 HPLC with a Waters 2996 PDA. Waters Micromass ZQ parameters used were: Capillary (kV), 3.38; Cone (V), 35; Extractor (V), 3.0; Source temperature ( $^{\circ}$ C), 100; Desolvation Temperature ( $^{\circ}$ C), 200; Cone flow rate (L/h), 50; De-solvation flow rate (L/h), 250. High-resolution mass spectroscopy (HRMS) data were recorded on a Waters Micromass QTOF Global in positive W-mode using metal-coated borosilicate glass tips to introduce the samples into the instrument. Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC) was performed on silica gel aluminium plates (Merck 60, F<sub>254</sub>), and flash chromatography utilised silica gel (Merck 60, 230-400 mesh ASTM). Except for the HOBt (NovaBiochem) and solid-supported reagents (Argonaut), all other chemicals and solvents were purchased from Sigma-Aldrich and were used as supplied without further purification. Anhydrous solvents were prepared by distillation under

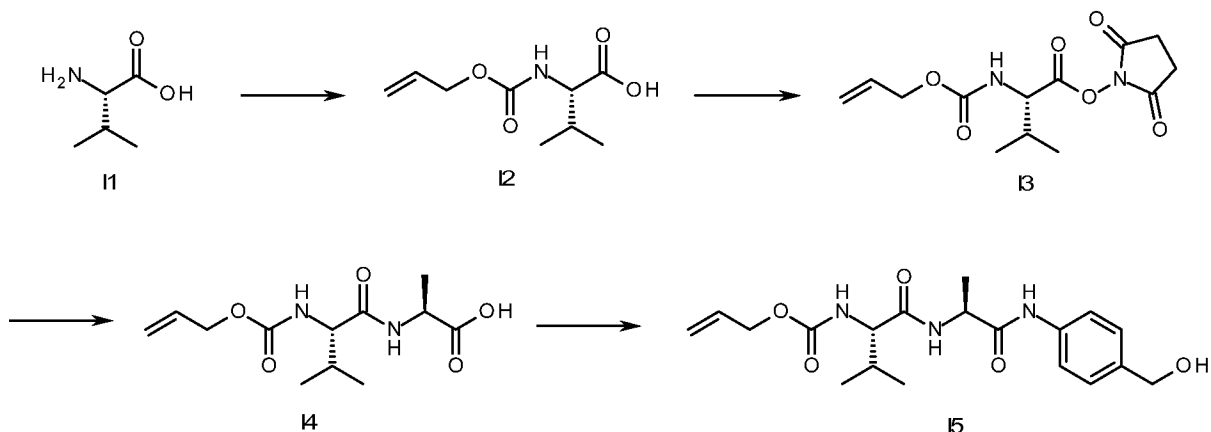
a dry nitrogen atmosphere in the presence of an appropriate drying agent, and were stored over 4Å molecular sieves or sodium wire. Petroleum ether refers to the fraction boiling at 40-60°C.

- 5 General LC/MS conditions: The HPLC (Waters Alliance 2695) was run using a mobile phase of water (A) (formic acid 0.1%) and acetonitrile (B) (formic acid 0.1%). Gradient: initial composition 5% B over 1.0 min then 5% B to 95% B within 3 min. The composition was held for 0.5 min at 95% B, and then returned to 5% B in 0.3 minutes. Total gradient run time equals 5 min. Flow rate 3.0 mL/min, 400µL was split *via* a zero dead volume tee piece  
 10 which passes into the mass spectrometer. Wavelength detection range: 220 to 400 nm. Function type: diode array (535 scans). Column: Phenomenex® Onyx Monolithic C18 50 x 4.60 mm

### Example 9

#### 15 (i) Key Intermediates

(a)



(a-i) *(S)*-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanoic acid (**12**)

- 20 Allyl chloroformate (36.2 ml, 340.59 mmol, 1.2 eq) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of L-valine (**11**)(33.25 g, 283.82 mmol, 1.0 eq) and potassium carbonate (59.27 g, 425.74 mmol, 1.5 eq) in water (650 mL) and THF (650 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours, then the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure and the remaining solution extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 100 mL). The aqueous portion was acidified to pH 2 with conc. HCl and extracted with DCM (3 x 100 mL). The combined  
 25 organics were washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the product as a colourless oil (57.1 g, assumed 100% yield). LC/MS (1.966 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 202.1 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 12.57 (br s, 1H), 7.43 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.6 Hz), 5.96 – 5.86 (m, 1H), 5.30 (ddd, 1H, *J* = 17.2, 3.4, 1.7 Hz), 5.18

(ddd, 1H,  $J = 10.4, 2.9, 1.6$  Hz), 4.48 (dt, 2H,  $J = 5.3, 1.5$  Hz), 3.85 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.6, 6.0$  Hz), 2.03 (oct, 1H,  $J = 6.6$  Hz), 0.89 (d, 3H,  $J = 6.4$  Hz), 0.87 (d, 3H,  $J = 6.5$  Hz).

*(a-ii) (S)-2,5-dioxopyrrolidin-1-yl 2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanoate (13)*

5 To a stirred solution of the protected acid **I2** (60.6 g, 301.16 mmol, 1.0 eq) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (34.66 g, 301.16 mmol, 1.0 eq) in dry THF (800 mL) was added dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (62.14 g, 301.16 mmol, 1 eq). The reaction was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was then filtered, the solid washed with THF and the combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was re-

10 dissolved in DCM and left to stand at 0°C for 30 minutes. The suspension was filtered and washed with cold DCM. Concentration of the filtrate under reduced pressure afforded the product as a viscous colourless oil (84.7 g, assumed 100% yield) which was used in the next step without further purification. LC/MS (2.194 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)),  $m/z$ : 321.0 [M+Na]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$  8.0 (d, 1H,  $J = 8.3$  Hz), 5.97 – 5.87 (m, 1H), 5.30 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 17.2, 3.0,$

15 1.7 Hz), 5.19 (ddd, 1H,  $J = 10.4, 2.7, 1.4$  Hz), 4.52 (dt, 2H,  $J = 5.3, 1.4$  Hz), 4.32 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8.3, 6.6$  Hz), 2.81 (m, 4H), 2.18 (oct, 1H,  $J = 6.7$  Hz), 1.00 (d, 6H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz),

*(a-iii) (S)-2-((S)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanoic acid (14)*

A solution of succinimide ester **I3** (12.99 g, 43.55 mmol, 1.0 eq) in THF (50 mL) was added to

20 a solution of L-alanine (4.07 g, 45.73 mmol, 1.05 eq) and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (4.02 g, 47.90 mmol, 1.1 eq) in THF (100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 72 hours when the THF was removed under reduced pressure. The pH was adjusted to 3-4 with citric acid to precipitate a white gum. After extraction with ethyl acetate (6 x 150 mL), the combined organics were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and

25 concentrated under reduced pressure. Trituration with diethyl ether afforded the product as a white powder which was collected by filtration and washed with diethyl ether (5.78 g, 49%). LC/MS (1.925 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)),  $m/z$ : 273.1 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>)  $\delta$  12.47 (br s, 1H), 8.17 (d, 1H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 7.16 (d, 1H,  $J = 9.0$  Hz), 5.95 – 5.85 (m, 1H), 5.29 (dd, 1H,  $J = 17.2, 1.7$  Hz), 5.17 (dd, 1H,  $J = 10.4, 1.5$  Hz), 4.46 (m, 2H), 4.18 (quin, 1H,  $J = 7.2$  Hz), 3.87

30 (dd, 1H,  $J = 9.0, 7.1$  Hz), 1.95 (oct, 1H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 1.26 (d, 3H,  $J = 7.3$  Hz), 0.88 (d, 3H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz), 0.83 (d, 3H,  $J = 6.8$  Hz).

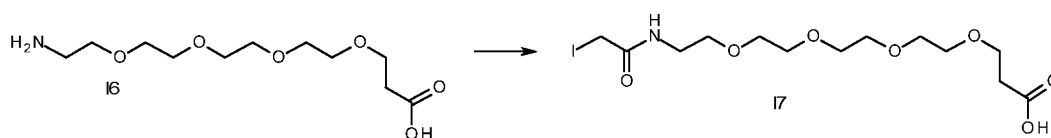
*(a-iv) Allyl (S)-1-((S)-1-(4-(hydroxymethyl)phenylamino)-1-oxopropan-2-ylamino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-ylcarbamate (15)*

35 EEDQ (5.51 g, 22.29 mmol, 1.05 eq) was added to a solution of *p*-aminobenzyl alcohol (2.74 g, 22.29 mmol, 1.05 eq) and acid **I4** (5.78 g, 21.23 mmol, 1 eq) in dry THF (100 mL). and



stirred at room temperature for 72 hours. The reaction mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure and the resulting brown solid was triturated with diethyl ether and filtered with subsequent washing with an excess of diethyl ether to afford the product as an off-white solid (7.1 g, 88 %). LC/MS (1.980 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 378.0 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 9.89 (br s, 1H), 8.13 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.0 Hz), 7.52 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 7.26 (m, 1H), 7.23 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 5.91 (m, 1H), 5.30 (m, 1H), 5.17 (m, 1H), 4.46 (m, 2H), 5.09 (t, 1H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 4.48 (m, 2H), 4.42 (m, 3H), 3.89 (dd, 1H, *J* = 8.6, 6.8 Hz), 1.97 (m, 1H), 1.30 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 0.88 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.83 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.7 Hz).

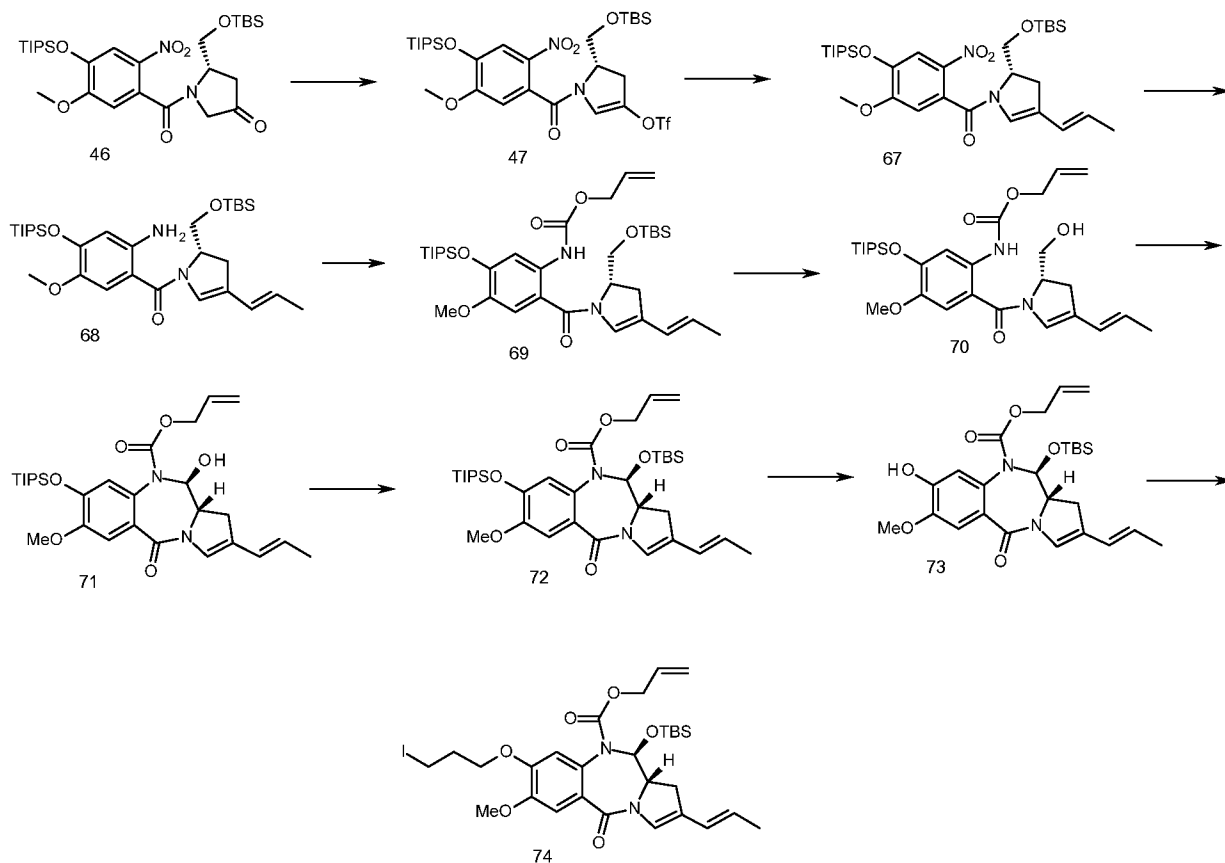
10 (b)



*1-iodo-2-oxo-6,9,12,15-tetraoxa-3-azaocetadecan-18-oic acid (17)*

A solution of iodoacetic anhydride (0.250 g, 0.706 mmol, 1.1 eq) in dry DCM (1 mL) was added to amino-PEG<sub>4</sub>-acid **16** (0.170 g, 0.642 mmol, 1.0 eq) in DCM (1 mL). The mixture was stirred in the dark at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with 0.1 M HCl, water, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 3% MeOH and 0.1% formic acid in chloroform to 10% MeOH and 0.1% formic acid in chloroform) to afford the product as an orange oil (0.118 g, 42%). LC/MS (1.623 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 433..98 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.069 (s, 1H), 7.22 (br s, 1H), 3.79 (t, 2H, *J* = 5.8 Hz), 3.74 (s, 2H), 3.72 – 3.58 (m, 14H), 3.50 – 3.46 (m, 2H), 2.62 (t, 2H, *J* = 5.8 Hz).

(ii) (11S,11aS)-allyl 11-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-8-(3-iodopropoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (74)



5

(a) *(S)-5-((tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)methyl)-1-(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-(triisopropylsilyloxy)benzoyl)-4,5-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl trifluoromethanesulfonate (47)*

Triflic anhydride (28.4 g, 100.0 mmol, 3.0 eq) was added dropwise, over 25 mins, to a vigorously stirred solution of the ketone **46** (19.5 g, 30.0 mmol, 1.0 eq) in DCM (550 mL) containing 2,6-lutidine (14.4 g, 130.0 mmol, 4.0 eq) at -50°C. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 hours when LC/MS indicated complete reaction. The organic phase was washed successively with water (100 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (150 mL), brine (50 mL), and the organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 90/10 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a pale yellow oil (19.5 g, 82 %). LC/MS (4.391 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 713.25 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.68 (s, 1H), 6.72 (s, 1H), 6.02 (t, 1H, *J* = 1.9 Hz), 4.75 (m, 1H), 4.05 (m, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.15 (ddd, 1H, *J* = 16.2, 10.3, 2.3 Hz), 2.96 (ddd, 1H, *J* = 16.2, 4.0, 1.6 Hz), 1.28 – 1.21 (m, 3H), 1.07 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.2 Hz), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.09 (s, 3H), 0.08 (s, 3H).

(b) *(S,E)*-2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)methyl)-4-(prop-1-enyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)(5-methoxy-2-nitro-4-(triisopropylsilyloxy)phenyl)methanone (**67**)

Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.41 g, 0.35 mmol, 0.03 eq) was added to a mixture of the triflate **47** (8.4 g, 11.8 mmol, 1.0 eq), *E*-1-propene-1-ylboronic acid (1.42 g, 16.5 mmol, 1.4 eq) and potassium phosphate (5.0 g, 23.6 mmol, 2.0 eq) in dry dioxane (60 mL) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The mixture was stirred at 25°C for 120 mins when LC/MS indicated complete reaction. Ethyl acetate (120 mL) and water (120 mL) were added, the organic phase was removed, washed with brine (20 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 95/5 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 90/10 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a yellow foam (4.96 g, 70 %). LC/MS (4.477 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 605.0 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.67 (s, 1H), 6.74 (s, 1H), 5.93 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.4 Hz), 5.67 (s, 1H), 4.65 (m, 1H), 4.04 (m, 2H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.71 (m, 1H), 1.72 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 1.0 Hz), 1.30 – 1.22 (m, 3H), 1.07 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.2 Hz), 0.87 (s, 9H), 0.08 (s, 3H), 0.07 (s, 3H).

(c) *(S,E)*-2-amino-5-methoxy-4-(triisopropylsilyloxy)phenyl)(2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)methyl)-4-(prop-1-enyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrol-1-yl)methanone (**68**)

Zinc dust (22.0 g, 0.33 mol, 37 eq) was added, in portions over 20 mins, to a solution of the propenyl intermediate **67** (5.5 g, 9.1 mmol, 1.0 eq) in 5% v/v formic acid / ethanol (55 mL), using an ice bath to maintain the temperature between 25-30°C. After 30 mins, the reaction mixture was filtered through a short bed of celite®. The celite® was washed with ethyl acetate (65 mL) and the combined organics were washed successively with water (35 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (35 mL) and brine (10 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 90/10 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a pale yellow oil (3.6 g, 69.0 %). LC/MS (4.439 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 575.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 6.75 (m, 1H), 6.40 (br s, 1H), 6.28 (m, 1H), 6.11 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.4 Hz), 5.53 (m, 1H), 4.67 (m, 1H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 3.93 (br s, 1H), 3.84 (br s, 1H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 2.86 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.7, 10.4 Hz), 2.73 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.9, 4.5 Hz), 1.80 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 1.3 Hz), 1.35 – 1.23 (m, 3H), 1.12 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.3 Hz), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.08 (s, 3H), 0.07 (s, 3H).

(d) *(S,E)*-allyl 2-2-((*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)methyl)-4-(prop-1-enyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-(triisopropylsilyloxy)phenylcarbamate (**69**)

Allyl chloroformate (0.83 g, 6.88 mmol, 1.1 eq) was added to a solution of the amine **68** (3.6 g, 6.26 mmol, 1.0 eq) in dry DCM (80 mL) containing dry pyridine (1.09 g, 13.77 mmol, 2.2 eq) at -78°C. The dry ice was removed and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to room

temperature. After stirring for a further 15 minutes, LC/MS indicated complete reaction. The organic phase was washed successively with 0.01N HCl (50 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (50 mL), brine (10 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to leave a pale yellow oil which was used in the next step without further purification (4.12g, assumed 100% yield). LC/MS (4.862 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 659.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

*(e)(S,E)-allyl 2-(2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-(prop-1-enyl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-(triisopropylsilyloxy)phenylcarbamate (70)*

The crude intermediate **69** (assumed 100% yield, 4.12 g, 6.25 mmol, 1.0 eq) was dissolved in a mixture of acetic acid (70 mL), methanol (10 mL), THF (10 mL) and water (20 mL) and allowed to stir at room temperature. After 6 hours the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed successively with water (2 x 500 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (300 mL) and brine (50 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 1/99 v/v methanol/DCM to 5/95 v/v methanol/DCM) to afford the product as a yellow oil and a further 1 g of unreacted starting material was recovered. This material was subjected to the same reaction conditions as above, but was left stirring for 16 h. After work up and purification, additional product was isolated (2.7 g, 79%, 2 steps) LC/MS (3.742 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 545.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.38 (m, 1H), 7.72 (m, 1H), 6.81 (s, 1H), 6.37 (m, 1H), 6.10 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.8 Hz), 5.97 (m, 1H), 5.53 (m, 1H), 5.36 (ddd, 1H, *J* = 17.2, 3.1, 1.5 Hz), 5.25 (ddd, 1H, *J* = 10.4, 2.5, 1.3 Hz), 4.78 (m, 1H), 4.65 (dt, 2H, *J* = 5.7, 1.3 Hz), 3.84 (m, 3H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 3.04 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.7, 10.5 Hz), 2.40 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.0, 4.5 Hz), 1.82 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 1.0 Hz), 1.36 – 1.26 (m, 3H), 1.14 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.3 Hz).

*(f) (11S,11aS)-allyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-8-(triisopropylsilyloxy)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (71)*

Dry dimethyl sulfoxide (1.16 g, 14.87 mmol, 3.0 eq) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.94 g, 7.43 mmol, 1.5 eq) in DCM (25 mL) at -78°C under an atmosphere of nitrogen. Maintaining the temperature at -78°C, after 10 mins a solution of the primary alcohol **70** (2.7 g, 4.96 mmol, 1.0 eq) in DCM (20 mL) was added dropwise. After a further 15 mins, dry triethylamine (2.5g, 24.78 mmol, 5.0 eq) was added, and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed successively with cold 0.1N HCl (50 mL), saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate (50 mL) and brine (10 mL) and the organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced

pressure to afford the product as a yellow oil which was used in the next step without further purification (2.68g, assumed 100% yield). LC/MS (3.548 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 543.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

5 (g) (11*S*,11*aS*)-allyl 11-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((*E*)-prop-1-enyl)-8-(triisopropylsilyloxy)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**72**)

*Tert*-butyldimethylsilyltrifluoromethane sulfonate (3.93 g, 14.87 mmol, 3.0 eq) was added to a solution of the carbinolamine **71** (assumed 100% yield, 2.68 g, 4.96 mmol, 1.0 eq) and 2,6-lutidine (2.12 g, 19.83 mmol, 4.0 eq) in dry DCM (40 mL) at 0°C under an atmosphere of nitrogen. After 10 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 60 minutes. The organic phase was washed successively with water (10 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (10 mL) and brine (5 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, chloroform to 2/98 v/v Methanol/chloroform) to afford the product as a yellow oil (2.0g, 63%, 2 steps). LC/MS (4.748 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 657.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.19 (s, 1H), 6.86 (m, 1H), 6.66 (s, 1H), 6.22 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.4 Hz), 5.81 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.8 Hz), 5.78 (m, 1H), 5.48 (m, 1H), 5.11 (d, 1H, *J* = 5.0 Hz), 5.08 (m, 1H), 4.58 (dd, 1H, *J* = 13.4, 5.4 Hz), 4.35 (dd, 1H, *J* = 13.2, 5.7 Hz), 3.83 (s, 3H), 3.76 (s, 1H), 3.00 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.6, 11.0 Hz), 2.53 (m, 1H), 1.81 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 0.9 Hz), 1.30 – 1.18 (m, 3H), 1.08 (d, 9H, *J* = 2.3 Hz), 1.06 (d, 9H, *J* = 2.3 Hz), 0.86 (s, 9H), 0.25 (s, 3H), 0.18 (s, 3H).

(h) (11*S*,11*aS*)-allyl 11-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((*E*)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**73**)

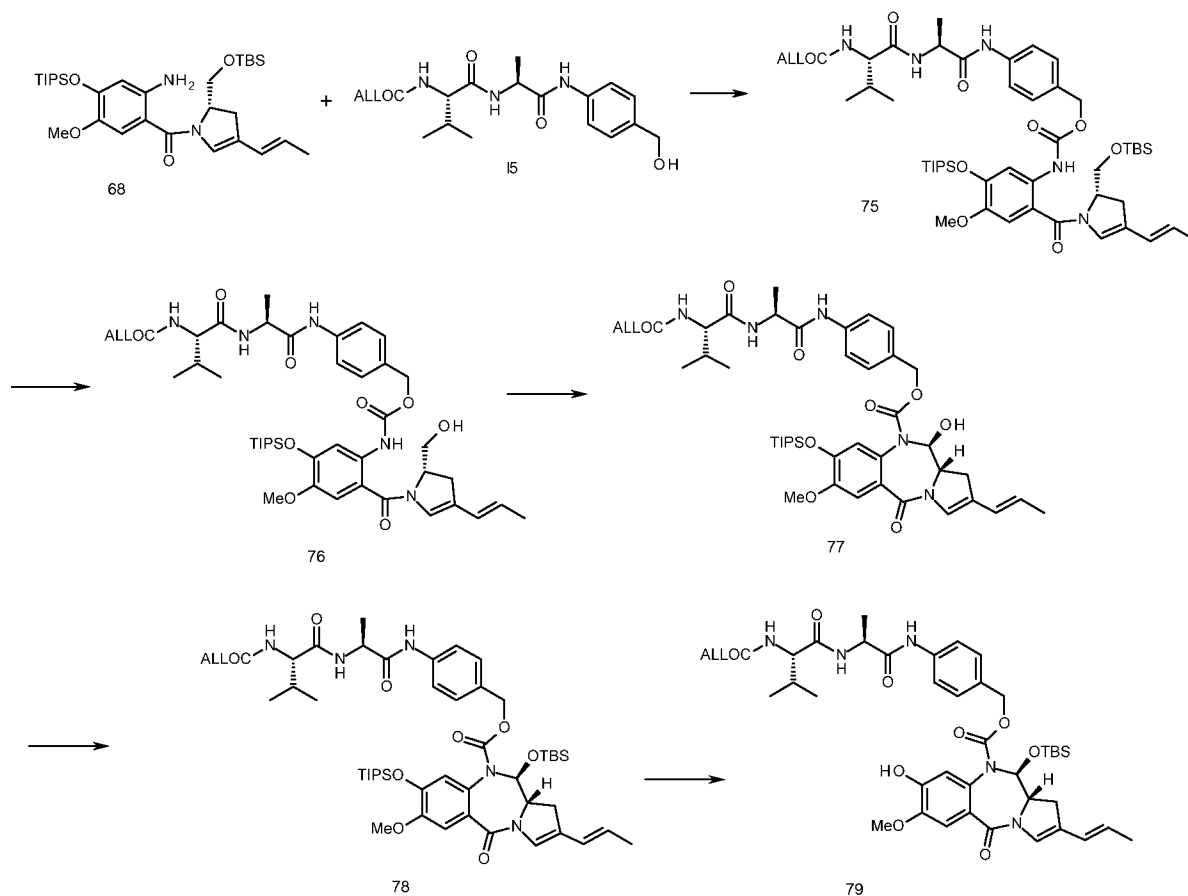
Lithium acetate dihydrate (0.31 g, 3.04 mmol, 1.0 eq) was added to a solution of the diazepine **72** (2.0 g, 3.04 mmol, 1.0 eq) in wet DMF (20 mL) at 25°C and stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (200 mL) and washed successively with 0.1M citric acid (50 mL, pH 3), water (50 mL) and brine (10 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 25/75 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a pale yellow solid (0.68g, 45 %). LC/MS (3.352 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 501.1 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.02 (s, 1H), 6.66 (m, 1H), 6.53 (s, 1H), 6.03 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.5 Hz), 5.80 (s, 1H), 5.63 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.9 Hz), 5.55 (m, 1H), 5.29 (m, 1H), 4.87 (m, 2H), 4.39 (dd, 1H, *J* = 13.5, 4.2 Hz), 4.20 (dd, 1H, *J* = 13.2, 5.7 Hz), 3.73 (s, 3H), 3.59 (m, 1H), 2.81 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.1, 10.5 Hz), 2.35 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.7 Hz), 1.61 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.4 Hz), 0.67 (s, 9H), 0.05 (s, 3H), 0.00 (s, 3H).

(i) (11*S*,11*aS*)-allyl 11-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-8-(3-iodopropoxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((*E*)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (74)

5 Diiodopropane (0.295 g, 1.00 mmol, 5.0 eq) and potassium carbonate (0.028 g, 0.20 mmol, 1.0 eq) were added to a solution of the phenol **33** (0.100 g, 0.020 mmol, 1.0 eq) in dry acetone (5 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 60°C for 6 hours when LC/MS showed complete reaction. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 75/25 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a colourless oil (0.074  
10 g, 56%). LC/MS (3.853 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 669.0 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.26 (s, 1H), 6.90 (s, 1H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 6.24 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.3 Hz), 5.87 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.9 Hz), 5.78 (m, 1H), 5.53 (m, 1H), 5.12 (m, 2H), 4.65 (m, 2H), 4.41 (m, 1H), 4.11 (m, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.81 (m, 1H), 3.40 (t, 2H, *J* = 6.7 Hz), 3.05 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.3, 10.1 Hz), 2.57 (m, 1H), 2.34 (m, 2H), 1.84 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.92 (s, 9H), 0.28 (s, 3H), 0.26 (s, 3H).

15

(iii) (11S,11aS)-4-((S)-2-((S)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyl 11-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate **79**)



5

(a) Allyl ((S)-1-(((S)-1-((4-(((S)-2-((tert-butyldimethylsilyl)oxy)methyl)-4-((E)-prop-1-en-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyl)oxy)phenyl)carbamoyl)oxy)methyl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (**75**)

10 Triethylamine (0.256 mL, 1.84 mmol, 2.2 eq) was added to a stirred solution of the amine **68** (0.480 g, 0.835 mmol, 1.0 eq) and triphosgene (0.089 g, 0.301 mmol, 0.36 eq) in dry THF (15 mL) at 5°C (ice bath). The progress of the isocyanate reaction was monitored by periodically removing aliquots from the reaction mixture and quenching with methanol and performing LCMS analysis. Once the isocyanate reaction was complete a solution of Alloc-Val-Ala-PABOH **15** (0.473 g, 1.25 mmol, 1.5 eq) and triethylamine (0.174 mL, 1.25 mmol, 1.5 eq) in dry THF (10 mL) was rapidly added by injection to the freshly prepared isocyanate. The reaction was allowed to stir at 40°C for 4 hours followed by stirring at room temperature overnight. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 20/80 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc, then

1/99 v/v DCM/MeOH to 5/95 v/v DCM/MeOH) to afford the product as a yellow solid (0.579 g, 71%). LC/MS (4.468 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 978.55 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.63 (br s, 1H), 8.42 (s, 1H), 7.78 (br s, 1H), 7.53 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.31 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.6 Hz), 6.76 (s, 1H), 6.59 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 6.36 (br s, 1H), 6.04 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.9 Hz), 5.90 (m, 1H),  
5 5.55 (m, 1H), 5.33 – 5.21 (m, 3H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 4.66 (m, 2H), 4.57 (dd, 2H, *J* = 5.6, 1.0 Hz), 3.98 (dd, 1H, *J* = 7.3, 6.8 Hz), 3.90 (m, 1H), 3.81 (m, 1H), 3.78 (s, 3H), 2.82 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.4, 9.6 Hz), 2.72 (dd, 1H, *J* = 15.9, 3.5 Hz), 2.17 (m, 1H), 1.78 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.5, 0.8 Hz), 1.46 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 1.29 (m, 3H), 1.11 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 0.97 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.92 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.83 (s, 9H), 0.04 (s, 3H), 0.01 (s, 3H).

10

(b) *Allyl ((S)-1-(((S)-1-((4-(((2-((S)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-((E)-prop-1-en-1-yl)-2,3-dihydro-1H-pyrrole-1-carbonyl)-4-methoxy-5-((triisopropylsilyloxy)phenyl)carbamoyl)oxy)methyl)phenyl)amino)-1-oxopropan-2-yl)amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutan-2-yl)carbamate (76)*

15 The silyl ether **75** (1.49 g, 1.52 mmol, 1.0 eq) was dissolved in a 7:1:1:2 mixture of acetic acid/ methanol/ tetrahydrofuran/ water (14:2:2:4 mL) and allowed to stir at room temperature. After 2 hours the reaction was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed sequentially with water, aq. sodium bicarbonate then brine. The organic phase was then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash

20 chromatography (silica gel, 100/0 then 99/1 to 92/8 v/v DCM/ MeOH) to afford the product as an orange solid (1.2 g, 92%). LC/MS (3.649 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 865.44 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.44 (s, 1H), 8.35 (s, 1H), 7.69 (br s, 1H), 7.53 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.7 Hz), 7.32 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.3 Hz), 6.78 (s, 1H), 6.56 (m, 2H), 6.32 (br s, 1H), 6.05 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.9 Hz), 5.90 (m, 1H), 5.56 (m, 1H), 5.30 (m, 2H), 5.22 (m, 1H), 5.10 (d, 2H, *J* = 3.1 Hz), 4.73 (m, 1H),  
25 4.64 (m, 1H), 4.57 (d, 2H, *J* = 5.8 Hz), 4.01 (m, 1H), 3.79 (m, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 2.98 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.3, 10.2 Hz), 2.38 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.6, 4.1 Hz), 2.16 (m, 1H), 1.78 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 0.9 Hz), 1.46 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 1.29 (m, 3H), 1.11 (d, 18H, *J* = 7.4 Hz), 0.97 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.7 Hz), 0.92 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz).

30 (c) *(11S,11aS)-4-((S)-2-((S)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-8-(triisopropylsilyloxy)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (77)*

Dry dimethyl sulfoxide (0.180 g, 2.3 mmol, 3.0 eq) was added dropwise to a solution of  
35 oxalyl chloride (0.147 g, 1.1 mmol, 1.5 eq) in DCM (10 mL) at -78°C under an atmosphere of nitrogen. Maintaining the temperature at -78°C, after 20 minutes, a solution of the primary



alcohol **76** (0.666 g, 0.77 mmol, 1.0 eq) in DCM (10 mL) was added dropwise. After a further 15 minutes, dry triethylamine (0.390 g, 3.85 mmol, 5.0 eq) was added, and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was washed successively with cold 0.1N HCl (10 mL), saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate (10 mL) and brine (5 mL). The organic layer was then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was then purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc to 25/75 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a white solid (0.356g, 54 %). LC/MS (3.487 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 862.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.34 (br s, 1H), 7.47 (d, 2H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 7.17 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, 2H, *J* = 7.5 Hz), 6.86 (br s, 1H), 6.65 (br s, 1H), 6.42 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 6.22 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.4 Hz), 5.80 (m, 1H), 5.40 (m, 1H), 5.53 (m, 1H), 5.32 (m, 1H), 5.21 (d, 2H, *J* = 9.6 Hz), 5.06 (d, 1H, *J* = 12.3 Hz), 4.90 (m, 1H), 4.58 (m, 3H), 3.98 (m, 1H), 3.84 (m, 1H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.50 (m, 1H), 3.05 (dd, 1H, *J* = 16.0, 10.3 Hz), 2.76 (m, 1H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 1.80 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.7, 0.8 Hz), 1.44 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 1.16 (m, 3H), 1.01 (d, 18H, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 0.96 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.92 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.27 (s, 3H).

(d) (11*S*,11*aS*)-4-((*S*)-2-((*S*)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyl 11-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((*E*)-*prop*-1-enyl)-8-(*triisopropylsilyloxy*)-11,11*a*-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]pyrrolo[1,2-*a*][1,4]diazepine-10(5*H*)-carboxylate (**78**)

*Tert*-butyldimethylsilyltrifluoromethane sulfonate (0.46 g, 1.74mmol, 3.0 eq) was added to a solution of secondary alcohol **77** (0.5 g, 0.58 mmol, 1.0 eq) and 2,6-lutidine (0.25 g, 2.32 mmol, 4.0 eq) in dry DCM (10 mL) at 0°C under an atmosphere of nitrogen. After 10 minutes, the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for a further 120 mins. The organic phase was then washed successively with water (10 mL), saturated sodium bicarbonate (10 mL) and brine (5 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 50/50 v/v *n*-hexane/EtOAc) to afford the product as a white solid (0.320 g, 57 %). LC/MS (4.415 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 976.52 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.31 (br s, 1H), 7.48 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.0 Hz), 7.21 (s, 1H), 7.14 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.3 Hz), 6.89 (s, 1H), 6.65 (s, 1H), 6.38 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.3 Hz), 6.25 (d, 1H, *J* = 14.6 Hz), 5.93 (m, 1H), 5.85 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.8 Hz), 5.50 (m, 1H), 5.34 (m, 1H), 5.24 (m, 2H), 5.15 (d, 1H, *J* = 12.5 Hz), 4.86 (d, 1H, *J* = 12.2 Hz), 4.62 (m, 3H), 4.01 (m, 1H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.78 (m, 1H), 3.04 (m, 1H), 2.56 (m, 1H), 2.20 (m, 1H), 1.84 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.6, 0.7 Hz), 1.48 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 1.20 (m, 3H), 1.05 (d, 9H, *J* = 2.9 Hz), 1.03 (d, 9H, *J* = 2.9 Hz), 0.99 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.95 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.27 (s, 3H), 0.14 (s, 3H).

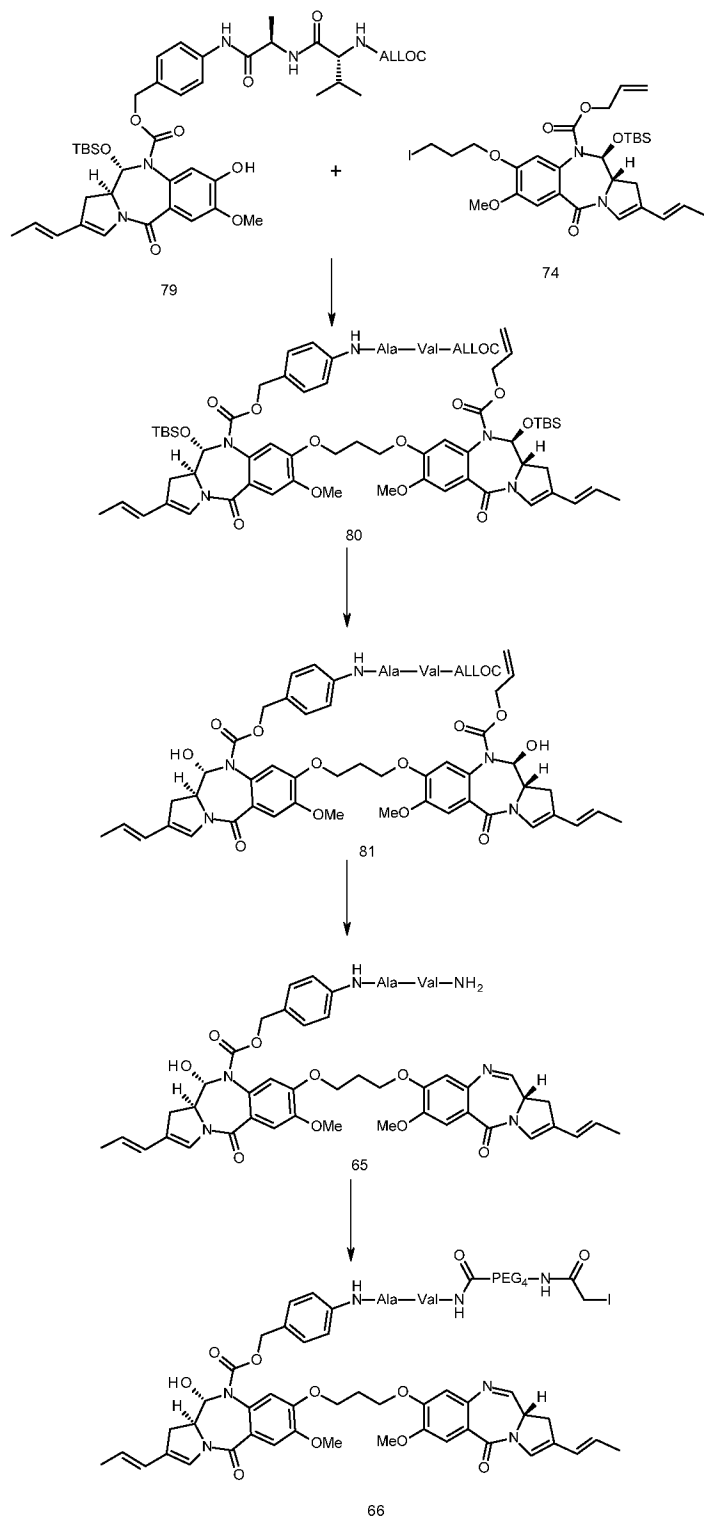
(e) (11S,11aS)-4-((S)-2-((S)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyl 11-(tert-butyl dimethylsilyloxy)-8-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**79**)

Lithium acetate dihydrate (0.010 g, 0.10 mmol, 1.0 eq) was added to a solution of the silyl ether **78** (0.100 g, 0.10 mmol, 1.0 eq) in wet DMF (2 mL) at 25°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was then diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL) and washed successively with 0.1M citric acid (20 mL, pH 3), water (20 mL) and brine (5 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 5/95 v/v methanol/DCM) to afford the product as a pale yellow oil (0.070 g, 83 %). LC/MS (3.362 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 820.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.39 (s, 1H), 7.48 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.25 (s, 1H), 7.12 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 6.88 (s, 1H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 6.47 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 6.24 (d, 1H, *J* = 15.2 Hz), 6.03 (s, 1H), 5.92 (m, 1H), 5.84 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.9 Hz), 5.50 (m, 1H), 5.34 (m, 1H), 5.26 (m, 2H), 5.18 (d, 1H, *J* = 12.3 Hz), 4.80 (d, 1H, *J* = 12.4 Hz), 4.66 – 4.60 (m, 3H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.81 (m, 1H), 3.03 (m, 1H), 2.57 (m, 1H), 2.19 (m, 1H), 1.84 (dd, 3H, *J* = 6.8, 0.8 Hz), 1.48 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.1 Hz), 1.00 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.95 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 0.87 (s, 9H), 0.26 (s, 3H), 0.12 (s, 3H).

20

(iv) (11S,11aS)-4-((20S,23S)-1-iodo-20-isopropyl-23-methyl-2,18,21-trioxo-6,9,12,15-tetraoxa-3,19,22-triazatetracosanido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-(3-((S)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (66, D)

5



(a) (11S,11aS)-allyl 8-(3-((11S,11aS)-10-((4-((R)-2-((R)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyloxy)carbonyl)-11-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)propoxy)-11-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-

5 1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**80**)

Potassium carbonate (0.030 g, 0.21 mmol, 1.0 eq) was added to a solution of the phenol **79** (0.175 g, 0.21 mmol, 1.0 eq) and the iodo linker **74** (0.214 g, 0.32 mmol, 1.5 eq) in acetone (10 mL). The reaction mixture was heated under a nitrogen atmosphere at 75°C in a sealed flask for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness under reduced  
10 pressure and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 2/98 v/v methanol/DCM to 5/95 v/v methanol/DCM) to afford the product as a pale yellow solid (0.100 g, 35%). LC/MS (4.293 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 1359.13 [M]<sup>+</sup>.

(b) (11S,11aS)-allyl 8-(3-((11S,11aS)-10-((4-((R)-2-((R)-2-(allyloxycarbonylamino)-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyloxy)carbonyl)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-5,10,11,11a-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)propoxy)-11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**81**)

Tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride (1M, 0.22 mL, 0.22 mmol, 2.0 eq) was added to a solution  
20 of silyl ether **80** (0.150 g, 0.11 mmol, 1.0 eq) in dry THF (2 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 minutes, after which LC/MS indicated complete reaction. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (10 mL) and washed sequentially with water (5 mL) and brine (5 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to leave a yellow solid. Purification by flash  
25 chromatography (silica gel, 6/94 v/v methanol/DCM to 10/90 v/v methanol/DCM) afforded the product as a pale yellow solid (0.090 g, 73%). LC/MS (2.947 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 1154.0 [M+Na]<sup>+</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.39 (br s, 1H), 7.39 (d, 2H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 7.18 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.6 Hz), 7.10 (m, 3H), 6.86 (d, 2H, *J* = 10.0 Hz), 6.74 (s, 1H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 6.22 (dd, 2H, *J* = 15.3, 6.6 Hz), 5.85 (m, 2H), 5.74 (m, 3H), 5.52 (m, 2H), 5.22 (m, 1H), 5.00 (m, 2H), 4.57  
30 (m, 6H), 4.41 (m, 2H), 4.09 (m, 4H), 3.85 (m, 11H), 3.06 (m, 2H), 2.76 (m, 2H), 2.20 (m, 2H), 2.08 (m, 1H), 1.79 (d, 6H, *J* = 6.4 Hz), 1.40 (d, 3H, *J* = 6.1 Hz), 0.90 (m, 6H).

(c) (11S,11aS)-4-((R)-2-((R)-2-amino-3-methylbutanamido)propanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-(3-((S)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**65**)

5 Tetrakis(triphenylphospene)palladium(0) (0.005 g, 0.005 mmol, 0.06 eq) was added to a solution of the bis-carbinolamine **81** (0.090 g, 0.08 mmol, 1.0 eq) and pyrrolidine (16  $\mu$ L, 0.20 mmol, 2.5 eq) in dry DCM (5 mL). After 20 minutes, the reaction mixture was diluted with DCM (10 mL) and washed sequentially with saturated ammonium chloride (5 mL) and brine (5 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced  
10 pressure to leave the crude product as a pale yellow solid which was used in the next step without further purification (0.075 g, assumed 100% yield). LC/MS (2.060 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 947.2 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

(d) (11S,11aS)-4-((20S,23S)-1-iodo-20-isopropyl-23-methyl-2,18,21-trioxo-6,9,12,15-tetraoxa-3,19,22-triazatetracosanamido)benzyl 11-hydroxy-7-methoxy-8-(3-((S)-7-methoxy-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-5,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepin-8-yloxy)propoxy)-5-oxo-2-((E)-prop-1-enyl)-11,11a-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]pyrrolo[1,2-a][1,4]diazepine-10(5H)-carboxylate (**66, D**)

EDCI (0.015 g, 0.08 mmol, 1.0 eq) was added to a solution of amine **65** (assumed 100%  
20 yield 0.075 g, 0.08 mmol, 1.0 eq) and iodoacetamide-PEG<sub>4</sub>-acid **I7** (0.034 g, 0.08 mmol, 1.0 eq) in dry dichloromethane (5 mL) and the reaction was stirred in the dark. After 50 minutes, a further amount of iodoacetamide-PEG<sub>4</sub>-acid **I7** (0.007 g, 0.016 mmol, 0.2 eq) was added along with a further amount of EDCI (0.003 g, 0.016 mmol, 0.2 eq). After a total of 2.5 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (15 mL) and washed sequentially with  
25 water (10 mL) and brine (10 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, Chloroform 100% to 90:10 v/v Chloroform:Methanol). Pure fractions were combined to afford the product (0.0254 g, 23%, 2 steps). The crude fractions were collected and purified by preparative TLC (silica gel, 90:10 v/v Chloroform:Methanol) to  
30 afford a second batch of product (0.0036 g, 3%, 2 steps). LC/MS (2.689 min (ES<sup>+</sup>)), *m/z*: 681.0 1/2[M+2H]<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 10: Activity of released compounds

#### K562 assay

35 K562 human chronic myeloid leukaemia cells were maintained in RPM1 1640 medium supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum and 2 mM glutamine at 37°C in a humidified

atmosphere containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub> and were incubated with a specified dose of drug for 1 hour or 96 hours at 37°C in the dark. The incubation was terminated by centrifugation (5 min, 300 g) and the cells were washed once with drug-free medium. Following the appropriate drug treatment, the cells were transferred to 96-well microtiter plates (10<sup>4</sup> cells per well, 8 wells per sample). Plates were then kept in the dark at 37°C in a humidified atmosphere containing 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. The assay is based on the ability of viable cells to reduce a yellow soluble tetrazolium salt, 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyl-2*H*-tetrazolium bromide (MTT, Aldrich-Sigma), to an insoluble purple formazan precipitate. Following incubation of the plates for 4 days (to allow control cells to increase in number by approximately 10 fold), 20 µL of MTT solution (5 mg/mL in phosphate-buffered saline) was added to each well and the plates further incubated for 5 h. The plates were then centrifuged for 5 min at 300 g and the bulk of the medium pipetted from the cell pellet leaving 10–20 µL per well. DMSO (200 µL) was added to each well and the samples agitated to ensure complete mixing. The optical density was then read at a wavelength of 550 nm on a Titertek Multiscan ELISA plate reader, and a dose-response curve was constructed. For each curve, an IC<sub>50</sub> value was read as the dose required to reduce the final optical density to 50% of the control value.

Compound ReIC has an IC<sub>50</sub> of less than 0.1 pM in this assay.

20 Compound ReIE has an IC<sub>50</sub> of 0.425 nM in this assay.

**Example 11: Formation of conjugates***General antibody conjugation procedure*

Antibodies are diluted to 1-5 mg/mL in a reduction buffer (examples: phosphate buffered saline PBS, histidine buffer, sodium borate buffer, TRIS buffer). A freshly prepared solution of TCEP (tris(2-carboxyethyl)phosphine hydrochloride) is added to selectively reduce cysteine disulfide bridges. The amount of TCEP is proportional to the target level of reduction, within 1 to 4 molar equivalents per antibody, generating 2 to 8 reactive thiols. After reduction for several hours at 37°C, the mixture is cooled down to room temperature and excess drug-linker (**A, B, C, D, E**) added as a diluted DMSO solution (final DMSO content of up to 10% volume/volume of reaction mixture). The mixture was gently shaken at either 4°C or room temperature for the appropriate time, generally 1-3 hours. Excess reactive thiols can be reacted with a 'thiol capping reagent' like N-ethyl maleimide (NEM) at the end of the conjugation. Antibody-drug conjugates are concentrated using centrifugal spin-filters with a molecular weight cut-off of 10 kDa or higher, then purified by tangential flow filtration (TFF) or Fast Protein Liquid Chromatography (FPLC). Corresponding antibody-drug conjugates can be determined by analysis by High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) or Ultra-High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (UHPLC) to assess drug-per-antibody ratio (DAR) using reverse-phase chromatography (RP) or Hydrophobic-Interaction Chromatography (HIC), coupled with UV-Visible, Fluorescence or Mass-Spectrometer detection; aggregate level and monomer purity can be analysed by HPLC or UHPLC using size-exclusion chromatography coupled with UV-Visible, Fluorescence or Mass-Spectrometer detection. Final conjugate concentration is determined by a combination of spectroscopic (absorbance at 280, 214 and 330 nm) and biochemical assay (bicinchonic acid assay BCA; Smith, P.K., *et al.* (1985) *Anal. Biochem.* **150** (1): 76–85; using a known-concentration IgG antibody as reference). Antibody-drug conjugates are generally sterile filtered using 0.2 µm filters under aseptic conditions, and stored at +4°C, -20°C or -80°C.

*DAR Determination*

Antibody or ADC (ca. 35 µg in 35 µL) was reduced by addition of 10 µL borate buffer (100 mM, pH 8.4) and 5 µL DTT (0.5 M in water), and heated at 37°C for 15 minutes. The sample was diluted with 1 volume of acetonitrile: water: formic acid (49%: 49%: 2% v/v), and injected onto a Widespore 3.6µ XB-C18 150 x 2.1 mm (P/N 00F-4482-AN) column (Phenomenex Aeris) at 80°C, in a UPLC system (Shimadzu Nexera) with a flow rate of 1 ml/min equilibrated in 75% Buffer A (Water, Trifluoroacetic acid (0.1% v/v) (TFA), 25% buffer B (Acetonitrile: water: TFA 90%: 10%: 0.1% v/v). Bound material was eluted using a gradient

from 25% to 55% buffer B in 10 min. Peaks of UV absorption at 214 nm were integrated. The following peaks were identified for each ADC or antibody: native antibody light chain (L0), native antibody heavy chain (H0), and each of these chains with added drug-linkers (labelled L1 for light chain with one drug and H1, H2, H3 for heavy chain with 1, 2 or 3 attached drug-linkers). The UV chromatogram at 330 nm was used for identification of fragments containing drug-linkers (i.e., L1, H1, H2, H3).

A PBD/protein molar ratio was calculated for both light chains and heavy chains:

$$\frac{\text{Drug}}{\text{Protein}} \text{ ratio on light chain} = \frac{\% \text{Area at 214nm for L1}}{\% \text{Area at 214 nm for L0 and L1}}$$

$$\frac{\text{Drug}}{\text{Protein}} \text{ ratio on heavy chain} = \frac{\sum_{n=0}^3 n \times (\% \text{area at 214 for Hn})}{\sum_{n=0}^3 \% \text{area at 214 for Hn}}$$

Final DAR is calculated as:

$$\text{DAR} = 2 \times \left( \frac{\text{Drug}}{\text{Protein}} \text{ ratio on light chain} + \frac{\text{Drug}}{\text{Protein}} \text{ ratio on heavy chain} \right)$$

DAR measurement is carried out at 214 nm because it minimises interference from drug-linker absorbance.

#### Generation of ADCs

Antibody A (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with SEQ ID NO. 7) was conjugated with drug linker A to give Conj A-A, and the DAR was measured to be 2.35.

Antibody B (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8) was conjugated with drug linker A to give Conj B-A, and the DAR was measured to be 2.2 (see table below).

Antibody C (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with SEQ ID NO. 12) was conjugated with drug linker A to give Conj C-A, and the DAR was measured to be 1.97.



Antibody D (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with SEQ ID NO. 10) was conjugated with drug linker A to give Conj D-A, and the DAR was measured to be 1.99.

- 5 Antibody E (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with SEQ ID NO. 11) was conjugated with drug linker A to give Conj E-A, and the DAR was measured to be 1.89.

- 10 Antibody B (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8) was conjugated with drug linker D to give Conj B-D, and the DAR was measured to be 2.18 (see table below).

- 15 Antibody B (comprising a variable domain which is SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8) was conjugated with drug linker E to give Conj B-E, and the DAR was measured to be 1.93 (see table below).

RB4v1.2 is an anti-CD19 antibody comprising a VH domain having the sequence according to SEQ ID NO. 2 and a VK domain having the sequence according to SEQ ID NO. 8.

- 20 As described above, ADCs targeted to CD19 were generated by conjugating RB4v1.2 antibodies to the drug linker A, E, or D. The resulting ADCs are listed in the table below, alongside the measured DAR. B12 anti-HIV gp120 antibody was used to generate control non-CD19 targeted ADCs.

ADC	DAR	Concentration [mg/ml]	Yield [%]
RB4v1.2-A	2.2	0.683	56
RB4v1.2-E	1.93	0.636	66
RB4v1.2-D	2.18	0.859	57
B12-A	2.03	0.98	71
B12-E	1.84	0.515	70
RB4v1.2-DM4	3.27	2.62	81

**EXAMPLE 12: in vitro cytotoxicity of ADCs***Cell Culture*

WSU-DLCL2 and SU-DHL-1 cells were from the Leibniz Institute DSMZ-German Collection  
5 of Microorganisms and Cell Cultures. Ramos and Daudi cells were from the American Type  
Culture Collection. Cell culture medium was RPMI 1640 supplemented with L-Glutamine and  
10% FBS. Cells were grown at 37°C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>, in a humidified incubator.

*Cytotoxicity assay*

10 The concentration and viability of cultures of suspended cells (at up to  $1 \times 10^6$ /ml) were  
determined by mixing 1:1 with Trypan blue and counting clear (live)/blue (dead) cells with a  
haemocytometer. The cell suspension was diluted to the required seeding density (generally  
10<sup>5</sup>/ml) and dispensed into 96-well flat bottomed plates. For Alamar blue assay, 100 µl/well  
was dispensed in black-well plates. For MTS assay, 50 µl/well was dispensed in clear-well  
15 plates. A stock solution (1 ml) of ADC (20 µg/ml) was made by dilution of filter-sterile ADC  
into cell culture medium. A set of 8 x 10-fold dilutions of stock ADC were made in a 24 well  
plate by serial transfer of 100 µl onto 900 µl of cell culture medium. Each ADC dilution (100  
µl/well for Alamar blue, 50 µl/well for MTS) was dispensed into 4 replicate wells of the 96-  
well plate, containing cell suspension. Control wells received the same volume of culture  
20 medium only. After incubation for 4 days, cell viability was measured by either Alamar blue  
or MTS assay.

AlamarBlue® (Invitrogen, catalogue number DAL1025) was dispensed (20 µl per well) into  
each well and incubated for 4 hours at 37°C in the CO<sub>2</sub>-gassed incubator. Well fluorescence  
25 was measured at excitation 570 nm, emission 585 nm. Cell survival (%) was calculated from  
the ratio of mean fluorescence in the 4 ADC-treated wells compared to the mean  
fluorescence in the 4 control wells (100%).

MTS (Promega, catalogue number G5421) was dispensed (20 µl per well) into each well and  
30 incubated for 4 hours at 37°C in the CO<sub>2</sub>-gassed incubator. Absorbance was measured at  
490 nm. Cell survival (%) was calculated from the mean absorbance in the 4 ADC-treated  
wells compared to the mean absorbance in the 4 control wells (100%). Dose response  
curves were generated from the mean data of 3 replicate experiments and the EC<sub>50</sub> was  
determined by fitting data to a sigmoidal dose-response curve with variable slope using  
35 Prism (GraphPad, San Diego, CA).

*In vitro cytotoxicity*

The efficacy of RB4v1.2-A was tested against CD19 +ve cell lines, Daudi, Ramos and WSU-DLCL2. As a CD19 -ve control, SU-DHL-1 cells were used.

5

Figure 1 shows *in vitro* efficacy of RB4v1.2-A. Serial 10-fold dilutions ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ ) of RB4v1.2-A were incubated with Daudi, Ramos, WSU-DLCL2 or SU-DHL-1 cells. The Alamar Blue assay was performed at the end of the incubation period and cell survival calculated. Graphs represent the average of three replicate experiments.

10

RB4v1.2-A showed significant cytotoxicity against Daudi and Ramos cell, with slightly lower cytotoxicity against WSU-DLCL2 cells (Figure 1).

RB4v1.2-A	SUDHL1	Daudi	Ramos	WSU-DLCL2
EC50 ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ )	~6.706	0.001115	0.001021	0.1171

Figure 2 shows *in vitro* efficacy of RB4v1.2-E. Serial 10-fold dilutions ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ ) of RB4v1.2-E were incubated with Daudi, Ramos, WSU-DLCL2 or SU-DHL-1 cells. The Alamar Blue assay was performed at the end of the incubation period and cell survival calculated. Graphs represent the average of three replicate experiments.

15

RB4v1.2-E showed significant cytotoxicity against Daudi and Ramos cell, with slightly lower cytotoxicity against WSU-DLCL2 cells (Figure 2).

20

RB4v1.2-E	SUDHL1	Daudi	Ramos	WSU-DLCL2
EC50 ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ )	0.5390	0.001216	0.001467	0.03099

Figure 3 shows *in vitro* efficacy of RB4v1.2-D. Serial 10-fold dilutions ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ ) of RB4v1.2-D were incubated with Daudi, Ramos, WSU-DLCL2 or SU-DHL-1 cells. The Alamar Blue assay was performed at the end of the incubation period and cell survival calculated. Graphs represent the average of three replicate experiments.

25

RB4v1.2-D showed significant cytotoxicity against Daudi and Ramos cell, with slightly lower cytotoxicity against WSU-DLCL2 cells (Figure 3).

RB4v1.2-D	SUDHL1	Daudi	Ramos	WSU-DLCL2
EC50 ( $\mu\text{g/mL}$ )	~0.7540	0.001022	0.0007979	0.02190

**EXAMPLE 13 – in vivo anti-tumour activity of ADCs**

The CD19 +(ve) human Burkitt's lymphoma-derived cell line Ramos was used to determine the most potent PBD drug linker for RB4v1.2 in vivo. The antibody was conjugated to A, E, or D drug linkers as described above and tested in the Ramos xenograft model. As non-  
 5 CD19-binding controls, the anti-HIV gp120 antibody, B12, linked to A or E was used. At the same time, to investigate any potential anti-tumor activity observed with the RB4v1.2 without a PBD warhead, RB4v1.2 was tested in vivo conjugated to DM4, a maytansinoid derivative which acts as a tubulin inhibitor.

10 *Study design*

Drugs and treatment:

Group No	Animals per group	ADC	Dose level (mg/kg)	Dose volume (ml/kg)
1	10	[no treatment]	-	-
2	10	[vehicle only]	-	-
3	10	RB4v1.2 [no PBD]	1.0	10
4	10	RB4v1.2-A	0.3	10
5	10	RB4v1.2-A	1.0	10
6	10	RB4v1.2-E	0.3	10
7	10	RB4v1.2-E	1.0	10
8	10	RB4v1.2-D	0.3	10
9	10	RB4v1.2-D	1.0	10
10	10	B12-E	1.0	10
11	10	B12-A	1.0	10

Procedures:

- Set up CR female NCr nu/nu mice with 1 x Ramos-SPN tumor cells in 0%  
 15 Matrigel sc in flank.
- Cell Injection Volume is 0.1 mL/mouse.
- Age at Start Date: 8 to 12 weeks.
- Perform a pair match when tumors reach an average size of 100 - 150 mm<sup>3</sup> and begin treatment.
- 20 • Body Weight: qd x 5 then bi-wk to end
- Caliper Measurement: bi-wk to end
- Report any adverse reactions or death immediately.

- Any individual animal with a single observation of >30% body weight loss or three consecutive measurements of >25% body weight loss will be euthanized.
- Any group with two measurements of mean body weight loss of >20% or > 10% mortality will stop dosing. The group is not euthanized and recovery is allowed. Within a group with >20% weight loss, individuals hitting the individual body weight loss endpoint will be euthanized. If the group treatment related body weight loss is recovered to within 10% of the original weights, dosing may resume at a lower dose or less frequent dosing schedule. Exceptions to non-treatment body weight% recovery may be allowed on a case-by-case basis.
- Endpoint TGD. Animals are to be monitored individually. The endpoint of the experiment is a tumor volume of 2000mm<sup>3</sup> or 60 days, whichever comes first. Responders can be followed longer. When the endpoint is reached, the animals are to be euthanized.

#### *General methodological approach*

- For the calculation of group mean tumor volumes the following rule was applied: when an animal exited the study due to tumor size, the final tumor volume recorded for the animal was included with the data used to calculate the mean volume at subsequent time points. Error bars indicate standard error of the mean (SEM). Tumor volumes values were not used to calculate group mean tumor volumes when fewer than 50% of the animals in a group remained in the study. Prism (GraphPad, San Diego, CA) was used for graphical presentations and statistical analyses.

#### *Results*

- Figure 4 shows drug linker selection for RB4v1.2-ADCs. Mice were dosed when the mean tumor volume per experimental group reached 0.1 cm<sup>3</sup> and they were treated with a single dose of the ADCs at 0.3 and 1 mg/kg (for binding ADCs) and 1 mg/kg (for non-binding-ADCs) via IV in the tail vein. Data represent the mean tumour volume (+/- SEM) from ten mice in each group.
- RB4v1.2-A, -E and -D all exhibited anti-tumor activity, with RB4v1.2-E and -D appearing more potent than RB4v1.2-A (see Figure 4). Neither non-binding ADC controls (B12-A and B12-E) showed a significant anti-tumor activity.

**Abbreviations**

	Ac	acetyl
5	Acm	acetamidomethyl
	Alloc	allyloxycarbonyl
	Boc	di- <i>tert</i> -butyl dicarbonate
	t-Bu	tert-butyl
	Bzl	benzyl, where Bzl-OMe is methoxybenzyl and Bzl-Me is methylbenzene
10	Cbz or Z	benzyloxy-carbonyl, where Z-Cl and Z-Br are chloro- and bromobenzyloxy carbonyl respectively
	DMF	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
	Dnp	dinitrophenyl
	DTT	dithiothreitol
15	Fmoc	9 <i>H</i> -fluoren-9-ylmethoxycarbonyl
	imp	<i>N</i> -10 imine protecting group: 3-(2-methoxyethoxy)propanoate-Val-Ala-PAB
	MC-OSu	maleimidocaproyl- <i>O</i> - <i>N</i> -succinimide
	Moc	methoxycarbonyl
	MP	maleimidopropanamide
20	Mtr	4-methoxy-2,3,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl
	PAB	para-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl
	PEG	ethyleneoxy
	PNZ	<i>p</i> -nitrobenzyl carbamate
	Psec	2-(phenylsulfonyl)ethoxycarbonyl
25	TBDMS	tert-butyldimethylsilyl
	TBDPS	tert-butyldiphenylsilyl
	Teoc	2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl
	Tos	tosyl
	Troc	2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl chloride
30	Trt	trityl
	Xan	xanthyl

**SEQUENCES****SEQ ID NO. 1** (RB4v1.0 VH):

QVQLVQPGAIEVVKPGASVKLSCKTSGYTFSTSNWMHWVKQRPGQGLEWIGEIDPSDSYTN  
 5 YNQNFQKAKLTVDKSTSTAYMEVSSLRSDDTAVYYCARGSNPYYYAMDYWGQGTSVTV  
 S

**SEQ ID NO. 2** (RB4v1.2 VH):

QVQLVQPGAIEVVKPGASVKLSCKTSGYTFSTSNWMHWVKQAPGQGLEWIGEIDPSDSYTN  
 10 YNQNFQKAKLTVDKSTSTAYMEVSSLRSDDTAVYYCARGSNPYYYAMDYWGQGTSVTV  
 S

**SEQ ID NO. 3** (B43 VH):

QVQLLESGAELVRPGSSVKISCKASGYAFSSYWMNHWVKQRPGQGLEWIGQIWPGDGDTN  
 15 YNGKFKGKATLTADESSSTAYMQLSSLRSEDSAVYSCARRETTTVGRYYYAMDYWGQGT  
 TVT

**SEQ ID NO. 4** (HD37 VH):

QVQLQQSGAELVRPGSSVKISCKASGYAFSSYWMNHWVKQRPGQGLEWIGQIWPGDGDT  
 20 NYNGKFKGKATLTADESSSTAYMQLSSLASEDSAVYFCARRETTTVGRYYYAMDYWGQG  
 TSVTVS

**SEQ ID NO. 5** (4G7 VH):

EVQLQQSGPELIKPGASVKMSCKASGYTFSTSYVMHWVKQKPGQGLEWIGYINPYNDGTKY  
 25 NEKFKGKATLTSKSSSTAYMELSSLTSEDSAVYYCARGTYYYGSRVFDYWGQGTTLTVS

**SEQ ID NO. 6** (FMC63 VH):

EVKLQESGPGLVAPSQSLSVTCTVSGVSLPDYGVSWIRQPPRKGLEWLGVIWGSETTYYN  
 SALKSRLTIKDNSKSKVFLKMNSLQTDDTAIYYCAKHYYYGGSYAMDYWGQGTSVTVS  
 30

**SEQ ID NO.7** (RB4v1.0 VK):

EIVLTQSPAISASPGERVMTCSASSGVNYMHWYQQKPGTSPRRWIYDTSKLGSGV  
 PAR  
 FSGSGSGTSYSLTISSEPEDAATYYCHQRGSYTFGGGTKLEIK

**SEQ ID NO. 8** (RB4v1.2 VK):

EIVLTQSPAIMASASPGERVTMTCSASSGVNYMHWYQQKPGTSPRRWIYDTSKLASGVPAR  
FSGSGSGTSYSLTISSMEPEDAATYYCHQRGSYTFGGGKLEIK

**SEQ ID NO. 9** (B43 VK):

5 ELVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCKASQSVDYDGDSYLNWYQQIPGQPPKLLIYDASNLVSGI  
PPRFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEKVDAATYHCQQSTEDPWTFGGGKLEIK

**SEQ ID NO. 10** (HD37 VK):

DILLTQTPASLAVSLGQRATISCKASQSVDYDGDSYLNWYQQIPGQPPKLLIYDASNLVSGIP  
10 PRFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEKVDAATYHCQQSTEDPWTFGGGKLEIK

**SEQ ID NO. 11** (4G7 VK):

DIVMTQAAPSIPVTPGESVSISCRSSKLLNSNGNTYLYWFLQRPQSPQLLIYRMSNLASG  
VPDRFSGSGSGTAFTLRISRVEAEDVGVYYCMQHLEYPFTFGAGTKLELK  
15

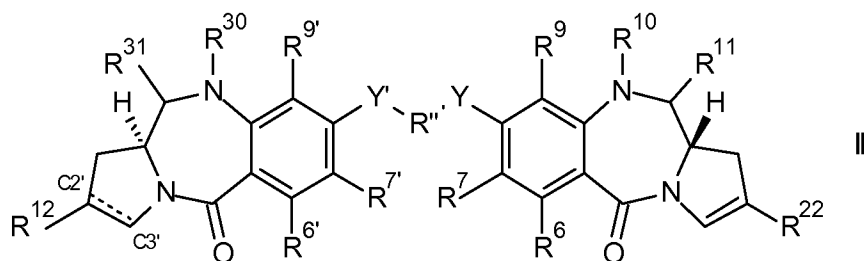
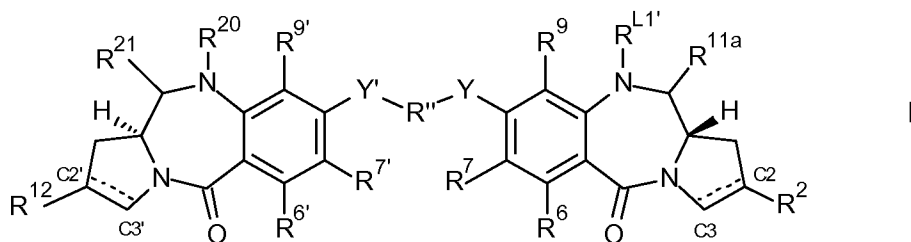
**SEQ ID NO. 12** (FMC63 VK):

DIQMTQTTSSLSASLGDRVTISCRASQDISKYLNWYQQKPDGTVKLLIYHTSRLHSGVPSRF  
SGSGSGTDYSLTISNLEQEDIATYFCQQGNTLPYTFGGGKLEIT  
20



## CLAIMS

1. A conjugate of formula L -  $(D^L)_p$ , where  $D^L$  is of formula I or II:



5

wherein:

L is an antibody (Ab) which is an antibody that binds to CD19, the antibody comprising a VH domain having the sequence according to any one of SEQ ID NOs. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6,

optionally further comprising a VL domain having the sequence according to any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;

10

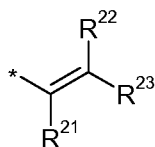
when there is a double bond present between C2' and C3', R<sup>12</sup> is selected from the group consisting of:

(ia) C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group comprising: halo, nitro, cyano, ether, carboxy, ester, C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> heterocyclyl and

15

(ib) C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl;

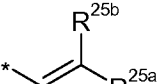
(ic) C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl;

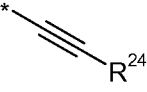


(id)  $\text{R}^{21}$ , wherein each of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon

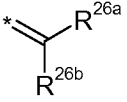
20

atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 5;

(ie)  , wherein one of R<sup>25a</sup> and R<sup>25b</sup> is H and the other is selected from: phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; and

(if)  , where R<sup>24</sup> is selected from: H; C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl; C<sub>2-3</sub>

- 5 alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; when there is a single bond present between C2' and C3',

R<sup>12</sup> is  , where R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> are independently selected from H, F, C<sub>1-4</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted by a group selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl amido and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester; or, when one of R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> is H, the other is selected from nitrile and a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester;

10 R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

15 where R and R' are independently selected from optionally substituted C<sub>1-12</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl and C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl groups;

R<sup>7</sup> is selected from H, R, OH, OR, SH, SR, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NHRR', nitro, Me<sub>3</sub>Sn and halo;

R<sup>n</sup> is a C<sub>3-12</sub> alkylene group, which chain may be interrupted by one or more heteroatoms, e.g. O, S, NR<sup>N2</sup> (where R<sup>N2</sup> is H or C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl), and/or aromatic rings, e.g. benzene or pyridine;

20 Y and Y' are selected from O, S, or NH;

R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>9</sup> are selected from the same groups as R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> respectively;

**[Formula I]**

R<sup>L1'</sup> is a linker for connection to the antibody (Ab);

25 R<sup>11a</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup>, where R<sup>A</sup> is C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, and SO<sub>z</sub>M, where z is 2 or 3 and M is a monovalent pharmaceutically acceptable cation;

R<sup>20</sup> and R<sup>21</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or;

R<sup>20</sup> is selected from H and R<sup>C</sup>, where R<sup>C</sup> is a capping group;

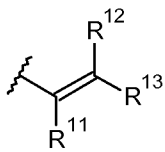
R<sup>21</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>z</sub>M;

30 when there is a double bond present between C2 and C3, R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of:

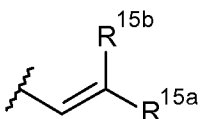
(ia) C<sub>5-10</sub> aryl group, optionally substituted by one or more substituents selected from the group comprising: halo, nitro, cyano, ether, carboxy, ester, C<sub>1-7</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-7</sub> heterocyclyl and bis-oxy-C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylene;

(ib) C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl;

5 (ic) C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl;

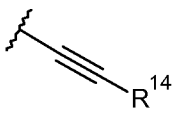


(id) , wherein each of R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl, where the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>2</sup> group is no more than 5;



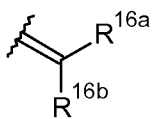
(ie) , wherein one of R<sup>15a</sup> and R<sup>15b</sup> is H and the other is selected from:

10 phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl; and



(if) , where R<sup>14</sup> is selected from: H; C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl; C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl; cyclopropyl; phenyl, which phenyl is optionally substituted by a group selected from halo, methyl, methoxy; pyridyl; and thiophenyl;

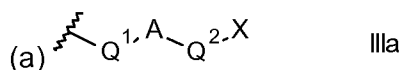
15 when there is a single bond present between C2 and C3,



R<sup>2</sup> is , where R<sup>16a</sup> and R<sup>16b</sup> are independently selected from H, F, C<sub>1-4</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted by a group selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl amido and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester; or, when one of R<sup>16a</sup> and R<sup>16b</sup> is H, the other is selected from nitrile and a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl ester;

20 **[Formula II]**

R<sup>22</sup> is of formula IIIa, formula IIIb or formula IIIc:

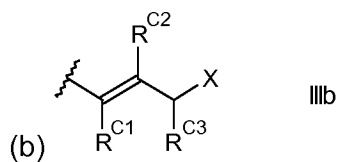


where A is a C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl group, and either

(i) Q<sup>1</sup> is a single bond, and Q<sup>2</sup> is selected from a single bond and -Z-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-, where Z is

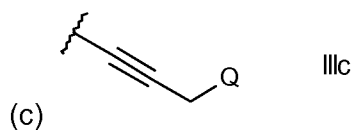
25 selected from a single bond, O, S and NH and n is from 1 to 3; or

(ii) Q<sup>1</sup> is -CH=CH-, and Q<sup>2</sup> is a single bond;



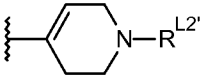
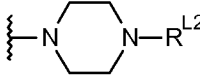
where;

R<sup>C1</sup>, R<sup>C2</sup> and R<sup>C3</sup> are independently selected from H and unsubstituted C<sub>1-2</sub> alkyl;



5 where Q is selected from O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup> and NR<sup>N</sup>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, and R<sup>N</sup> is selected from H, methyl and ethyl

X is selected from the group comprising: O-R<sup>L2'</sup>, S-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO<sub>2</sub>-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CO-R<sup>L2'</sup>, NH-C(=O)-R<sup>L2'</sup>,

NHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, CONHNH-R<sup>L2'</sup>, , , NR<sup>N</sup>R<sup>L2'</sup>, wherein R<sup>N</sup> is selected from the group comprising H and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

10 R<sup>L2'</sup> is a linker for connection to the antibody (Ab);

R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or;

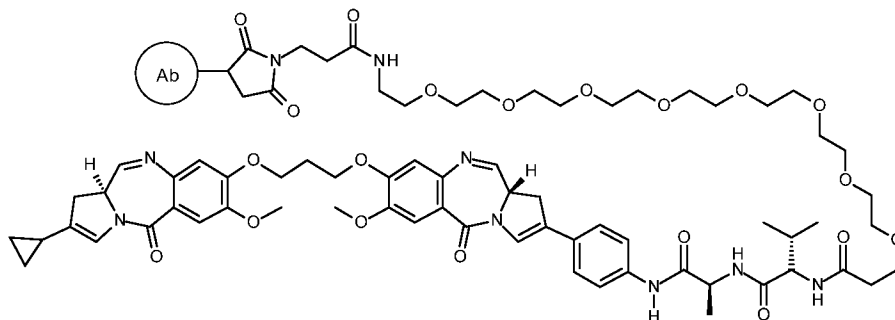
R<sup>10</sup> is H and R<sup>11</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>2</sub>M;

15 R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> either together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound or;

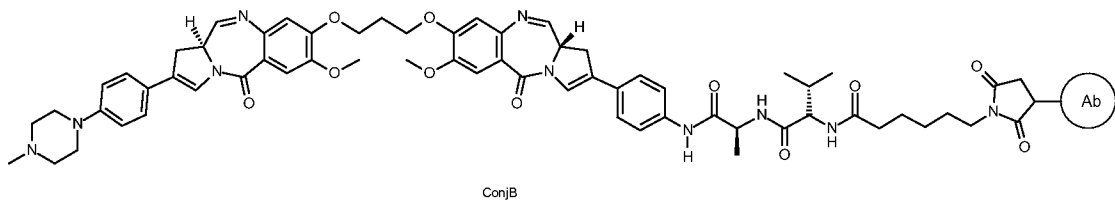
R<sup>30</sup> is H and R<sup>31</sup> is selected from OH, OR<sup>A</sup> and SO<sub>2</sub>M.

2. The conjugate according to claim 1, wherein the conjugate is not:

ConjA

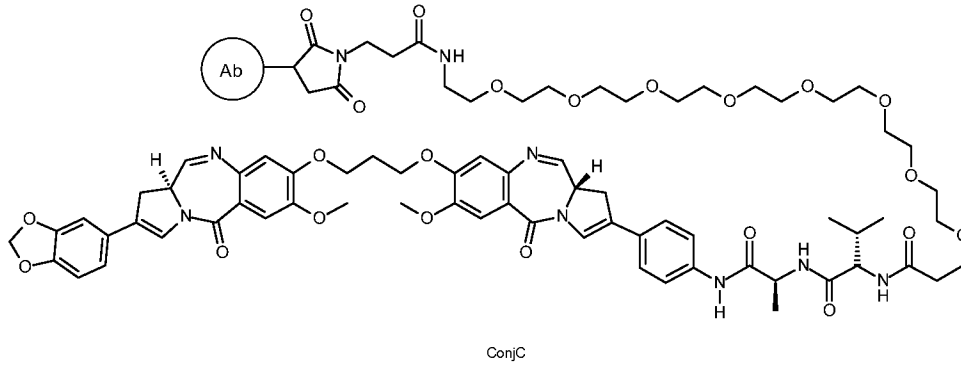


ConjB



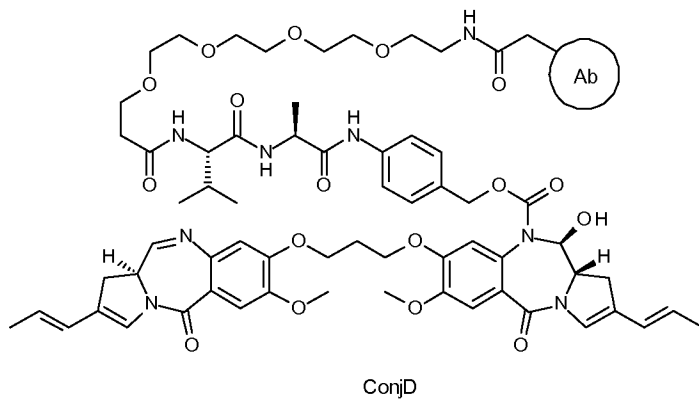
;

ConjC:



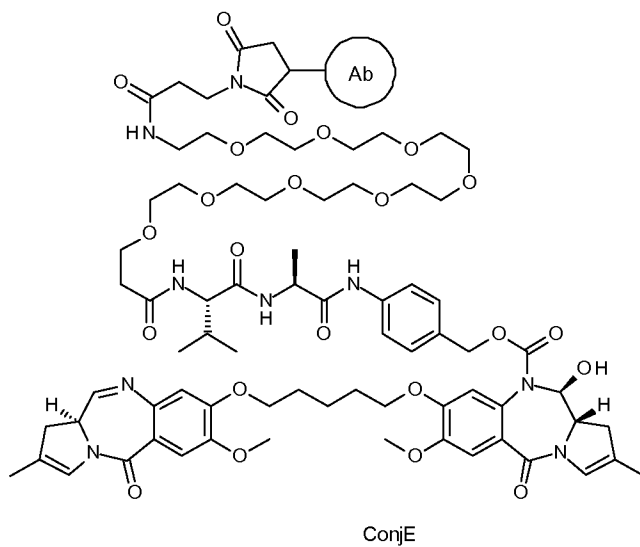
;

5 ConjD



; OR

ConjE:



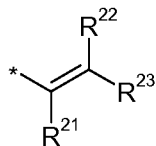
3. The conjugate according to either claim 1 or claim 2, wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from H, OH and OR.
- 5 4. The conjugate according to claim 3, wherein R<sup>7</sup> is a C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyloxy group.
5. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 4, wherein Y is O.
6. The conjugate according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein R<sup>7</sup> is C<sub>3-7</sub>  
10 alkylene.
7. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 6, wherein R<sup>9</sup> is H.
8. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 7, wherein R<sup>6</sup> is selected from H  
15 and halo.
9. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl group.
- 20 10. The conjugate according to claim 9, wherein R<sup>12</sup> is phenyl.
11. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>8-10</sub> aryl group.
- 25 12. The conjugate according to any one of claims 9 to 11, wherein R<sup>12</sup> bears one to three substituent groups.
13. The conjugate according to any one of claims 9 to 12, wherein the substituents are selected from methoxy, ethoxy, fluoro, chloro, cyano, bis-oxy-methylene, methyl-piperazinyl,  
30 morpholino and methyl-thiophenyl.
14. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl group.
- 35 15. A compound according to claim 16, wherein R<sup>12</sup> is methyl, ethyl or propyl.

16. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl group.

17. The conjugate according to claim 16, wherein R<sup>12</sup> is cyclopropyl.

5

18. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a group of formula:



10 19. The conjugate according to claim 18, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 4.

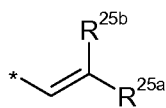
20. The conjugate according to claim 19, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>12</sup> group is no more than 3.

15

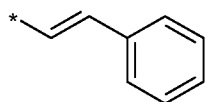
21. The conjugate according to any one of claims 18 to 20, wherein one of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> is H, with the other two groups being selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

20 22. The conjugate according to any one of claims 18 to 20, wherein two of R<sup>21</sup>, R<sup>22</sup> and R<sup>23</sup> are H, with the other group being selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

25 23. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a group of formula:

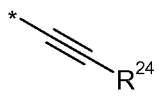


24. The conjugate according to claim 23, wherein R<sup>12</sup> is the group:



30

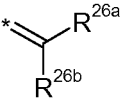
25. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a double bond between C2' and C3', and R<sup>12</sup> is a group of formula:



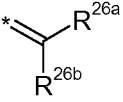
5 26. The conjugate according to claim 25, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is selected from H, methyl, ethyl, ethenyl and ethynyl.

27. The conjugate according to claim 26, wherein R<sup>24</sup> is selected from H and methyl.

10 28. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a single bond

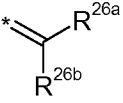
between C2' and C3', R<sup>12</sup> is  and R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> are both H.

29. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a single bond

between C2' and C3', R<sup>12</sup> is , and R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> are both methyl.

15

30. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 8, wherein there is a single bond

between C2' and C3', R<sup>12</sup> is , one of R<sup>26a</sup> and R<sup>26b</sup> is H, and the other is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted.

20

**[Formula I]**

31. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and R<sup>2</sup> is a C<sub>5-7</sub> aryl group.

25 32. The conjugate according to claim 31, wherein R<sup>2</sup> is phenyl.

33. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and R<sup>1</sup> is a C<sub>8-10</sub> aryl group.



34. A compound according to any one of claims 31 to 33, wherein R<sup>2</sup> bears one to three substituent groups.

35. The conjugate according to any one of claims 31 to 34, wherein the substituents are selected from methoxy, ethoxy, fluoro, chloro, cyano, bis-oxy-methylene, methyl-piperazinyl, morpholino and methyl-thiophenyl.

36. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and R<sup>2</sup> is a C<sub>1-5</sub> saturated aliphatic alkyl group.

10

37. The conjugate according to claim 36, wherein R<sup>2</sup> is methyl, ethyl or propyl.

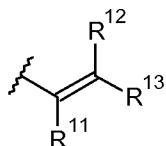
38. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and R<sup>2</sup> is a C<sub>3-6</sub> saturated cycloalkyl group.

15

39. The conjugate according to claim 38, wherein R<sup>2</sup> is cyclopropyl.

40. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and R<sup>2</sup> is a group of formula:

20



41. The conjugate according to claim 40, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>2</sup> group is no more than 4.

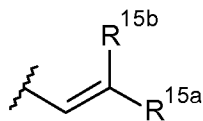
42. The conjugate according to claim 41, wherein the total number of carbon atoms in the R<sup>2</sup> group is no more than 3.

43. The conjugate according to any one of claims 40 to 42, wherein one of R<sup>11</sup>, R<sup>12</sup> and R<sup>13</sup> is H, with the other two groups being selected from H, C<sub>1-3</sub> saturated alkyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-3</sub> alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

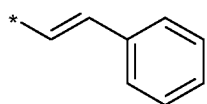
30

44. The conjugate according to any one of claims 40 to 42, wherein two of  $R^{11}$ ,  $R^{12}$  and  $R^{13}$  are H, with the other group being selected from H,  $C_{1-3}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkynyl and cyclopropyl.

5 45. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and  $R^2$  is a group of formula:

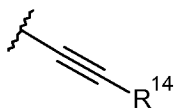


46. The conjugate according to claim 45, wherein  $R^2$  is the group:



10

47. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a double bond between C2 and C3, and  $R^2$  is a group of formula:



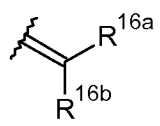
15

48. The conjugate according to claim 48, wherein  $R^{14}$  is selected from H, methyl, ethyl, ethenyl and ethynyl.

49. The conjugate according to claim 48, wherein  $R^{14}$  is selected from H and methyl.

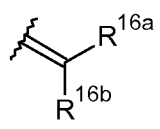
20

50. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a single bond

between C2 and C3,  $R^2$  is  and  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$  are both H.

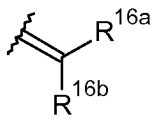
The diagram shows a single bond between two carbon atoms. The carbon on the right is bonded to two substituents,  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$ . The carbon on the left is bonded to a wavy line representing a connection point.

51. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a single bond

25 between C2 and C3,  $R^2$  is , and  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$  are both methyl.

The diagram shows a single bond between two carbon atoms. The carbon on the right is bonded to two substituents,  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$ . The carbon on the left is bonded to a wavy line representing a connection point.

52. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein there is a single bond



between C2 and C3,  $R^2$  is  $R^{16b}$ , one of  $R^{16a}$  and  $R^{16b}$  is H, and the other is selected from  $C_{1-4}$  saturated alkyl,  $C_{2-3}$  alkenyl, which alkyl and alkenyl groups are optionally substituted.

5

53. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 52, wherein  $R^{11a}$  is OH.

54. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 53, wherein  $R^{21}$  is OH.

10 55. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 53, wherein  $R^{21}$  is OMe.

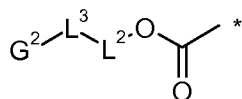
56. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 55, wherein  $R^{20}$  is H.

57. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 55, wherein  $R^{20}$  is  $R^C$ .

15

58. The conjugate according to claim 57, wherein  $R^C$  is selected from the group consisting of: Alloc, Fmoc, Boc, Troc, Teoc, Psec, Cbz and PNZ.

60. The conjugate according to claim 57, wherein  $R^C$  is a group:



20

where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the N10 position,  $G^2$  is a terminating group,  $L^3$  is a covalent bond or a cleavable linker  $L^1$ ,  $L^2$  is a covalent bond or together with  $OC(=O)$  forms a self-immolative linker.

25 61. The conjugate according to claim 60, wherein  $G^2$  is Ac or Moc or is selected from the group consisting of: Alloc, Fmoc, Boc, Troc, Teoc, Psec, Cbz and PNZ.

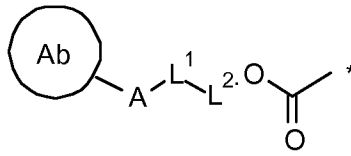
62. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 53, wherein  $R^{20}$  and  $R^{21}$  together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.

30

**[Formula II]**

63. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIa, and A is phenyl.
64. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claim 63, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of  
5 formula IIa, and  $Q^1$  is a single bond.
65. The conjugate according to claim 63, wherein  $Q^2$  is a single bond.
66. The conjugate according to claim 63, wherein  $Q^2$  is  $-Z-(CH_2)_n-$ , Z is O or S and n is 1  
10 or 2.
67. The conjugate according any one of claims 1 to 30 and claim 63, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIa, and  $Q^1$  is  $-CH=CH-$ .
- 15 68. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIb, and  $R^{C1}$ ,  $R^{C2}$  and  $R^{C3}$  are independently selected from H and methyl.
69. The conjugate according to claim 68, wherein  $R^{C1}$ ,  $R^{C2}$  and  $R^{C3}$  are all H.
- 20 70. The conjugate according to claim 68, wherein  $R^{C1}$ ,  $R^{C2}$  and  $R^{C3}$  are all methyl.
71. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 70, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIa or formula IIIb and X is selected from  $O-R^{L2'}$ ,  $S-R^{L2'}$ ,  $CO_2-R^{L2'}$ ,  $-N-C(=O)-R^{L2'}$  and  $NH-R^{L2'}$ .  
25
72. The conjugate according to claim 71, wherein X is  $NH-R^{L2'}$ .
73. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIc, and Q is  $NR^N-R^{L2'}$ .  
30
74. The conjugate according to claim 73, wherein  $R^N$  is H or methyl.
75. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30, wherein  $R^{22}$  is of formula IIIc, and Q is  $O-R^{L2'}$  or  $S-R^{L2'}$ .  
35

76. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 75, wherein R<sup>11</sup> is OH.
77. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 75, wherein  
5 R<sup>11</sup> is OMe.
78. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 77, wherein R<sup>10</sup> is H.
- 10 79. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 75, wherein R<sup>10</sup> and R<sup>11</sup> together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.
80. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 79, wherein  
15 R<sup>31</sup> is OH.
81. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 79, wherein R<sup>31</sup> is OMe.
- 20 82. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 81, wherein R<sup>30</sup> is H.
83. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 30 and claims 63 to 79, wherein  
25 R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> together form a double bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms to which they are bound.
84. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 83, wherein R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and Y' are the same as R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, and Y.
- 30 85. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 84 wherein, wherein L-R<sup>L1'</sup> or L-R<sup>L2'</sup> is a group:



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the PBD, Ab is the antibody, L<sup>1</sup> is a cleavable linker, A is a connecting group connecting L<sup>1</sup> to the antibody, L<sup>2</sup> is a covalent bond or together with -OC(=O)- forms a self-immolative linker.

5

86. The conjugate of claim 85, wherein L<sup>1</sup> is enzyme cleavable.

87. The conjugate of claim 85 or claim 86, wherein L<sup>1</sup> comprises a contiguous sequence of amino acids.

10

88. The conjugate of claim 87, wherein L<sup>1</sup> comprises a dipeptide and the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is selected from:

-Phe-Lys-,

-Val-Ala-,

15

-Val-Lys-,

-Ala-Lys-,

-Val-Cit-,

-Phe-Cit-,

-Leu-Cit-,

20

-Ile-Cit-,

-Phe-Arg-,

-Trp-Cit-.

89. The conjugate according to claim 88, wherein the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is selected from:

25

-Phe-Lys-,

-Val-Ala-,

-Val-Lys-,

-Ala-Lys-,

30

-Val-Cit-.

90. The conjugate according to claim 89, wherein the group -X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>- in dipeptide, -NH-X<sub>1</sub>-X<sub>2</sub>-CO-, is -Phe-Lys-, -Val-Ala- or -Val-Cit-.

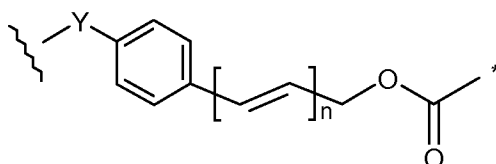
91. The conjugate according to any one of claims 88 to 90, wherein the group  $X_2\text{-CO-}$  is connected to  $L^2$ .

5 92. The conjugate according to any one of claims 88 to 91, wherein the group  $\text{NH-X}_1\text{-}$  is connected to A.

93. The conjugate according to any one of claims 88 to 92, wherein  $L^2$  together with  $\text{OC(=O)}$  forms a self-immolative linker.

10

94. The conjugate according to claim 93, wherein  $\text{C(=O)O}$  and  $L^2$  together form the group:

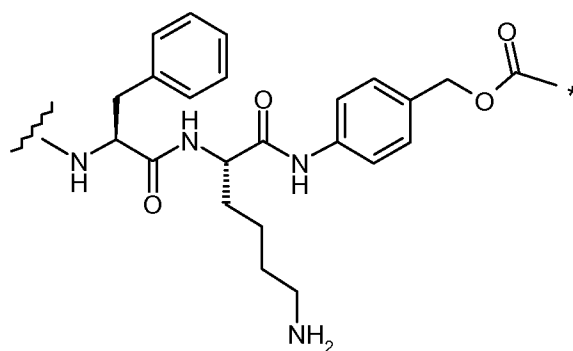


15 where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the PBD, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the linker  $L^1$ , Y is NH, O,  $\text{C(=O)NH}$  or  $\text{C(=O)O}$ , and n is 0 to 3.

95. The conjugate according to claim 94, wherein Y is NH.

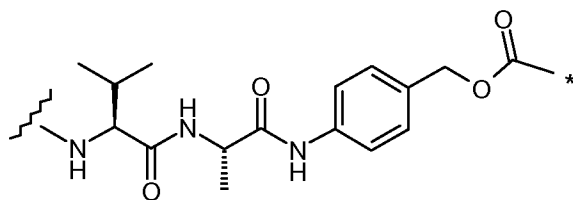
20 96. The conjugate according to claim 94 or claim 95, wherein n is 0.

97. The conjugate according to claim 95, wherein  $L^1$  and  $L^2$  together with  $\text{-OC(=O)-}$  comprise a group selected from:



or

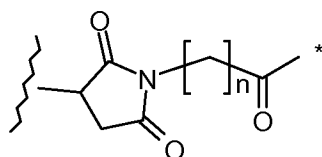
25



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to the PBD, and the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the remaining portion of the linker L<sup>1</sup> or the point of attachment to A.

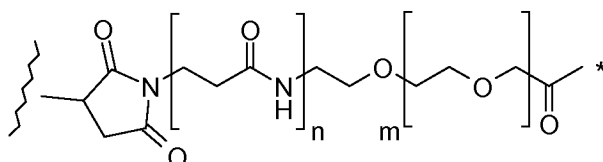
98. The conjugate according to claim 97, wherein the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to A.
99. The conjugate according to any one of claims 85 to 98, wherein A is:

(i)



where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>1</sup>, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody, and n is 0 to 6; or

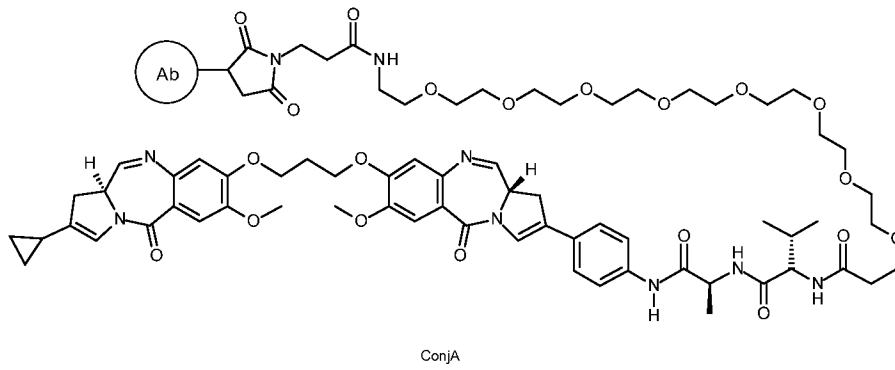
(ii)



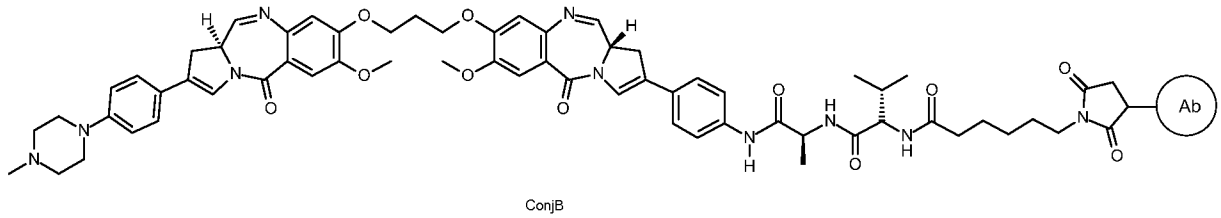
where the asterisk indicates the point of attachment to L<sup>1</sup>, the wavy line indicates the point of attachment to the antibody, n is 0 or 1, and m is 0 to 30.



100. A conjugate according to claim 1 of formula ConjA:

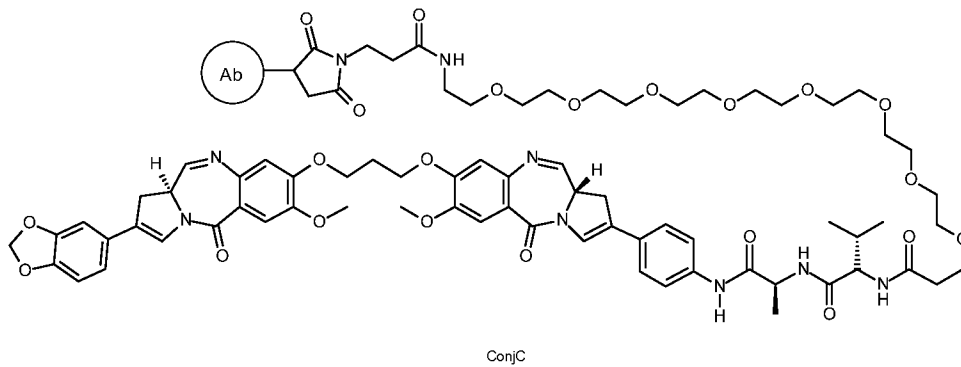


ConjB:

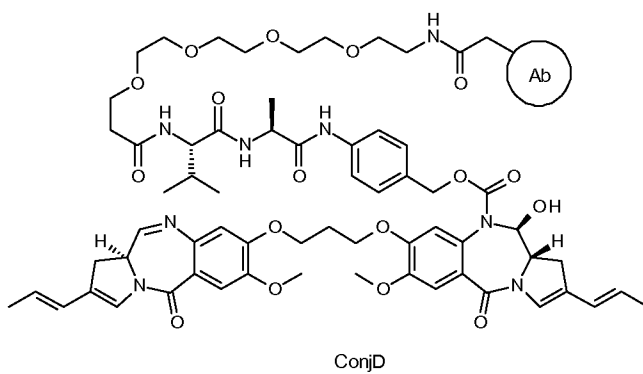


5

ConjC:

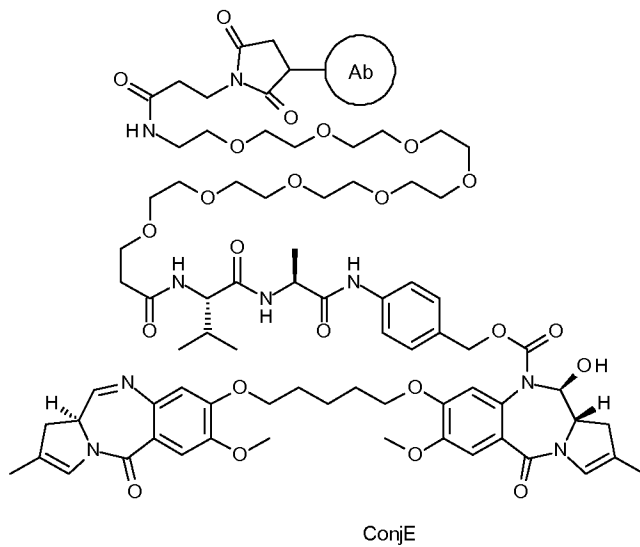


ConjD:



10

Or ConjE:



101. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 100 wherein the antibody comprises a VH domain paired with a VL domain, the VH and VL domains having sequences selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
 SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
 SEQ ID NO. 3 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
 SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12;  
 10 SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12; and  
 SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with any one of SEQ ID NOs. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

102. The conjugate according to claim 101 wherein the paired VH and VL domains have the sequences of: SEQ ID NO. 1 paired with SEQ ID NO. 7, SEQ ID NO. 2 paired with SEQ ID NO. 8, SEQ ID NO. 3 paired with SEQ ID NO. 9, SEQ ID NO. 4 paired with SEQ ID NO. 10, SEQ ID NO. 5 paired with SEQ ID NO. 11, or SEQ ID NO. 6 paired with SEQ ID NO. 12.

103. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 102 wherein the antibody is an intact antibody.

104. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 103 wherein the antibody is humanised, deimmunised or resurfaced.

105. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 104 wherein the drug loading (p) of drugs (D) to antibody (Ab) is an integer from 1 to about 8.

106. The conjugate according to claim 105, wherein p is 1, 2, 3, or 4.
107. The conjugate according to claim 105 comprising a mixture of the antibody-drug  
5 conjugate compounds, wherein the average drug loading per antibody in the mixture of  
antibody-drug conjugate compounds is about 2 to about 5.
108. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 107, for use in therapy.
- 10 109. The conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 107, for use in the treatment of a  
proliferative disease in a subject.
110. The conjugate according to claim 109, wherein the disease is cancer.
- 15 111. A pharmaceutical composition comprising the conjugate of any one of claims 1 to  
107 and a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent, carrier or excipient.
112. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 111 further comprising a therapeutically  
effective amount of a chemotherapeutic agent.
- 20 113. Use of a conjugate according to any one of claims 1 to 107 in the preparation of a  
medicament for use in the treatment of a proliferative disease in a subject.
114. A method of treating cancer comprising administering to a patient the pharmaceutical  
25 composition of claim 111.
115. The method of claim 114 wherein the patient is administered a chemotherapeutic  
agent, in combination with the conjugate.

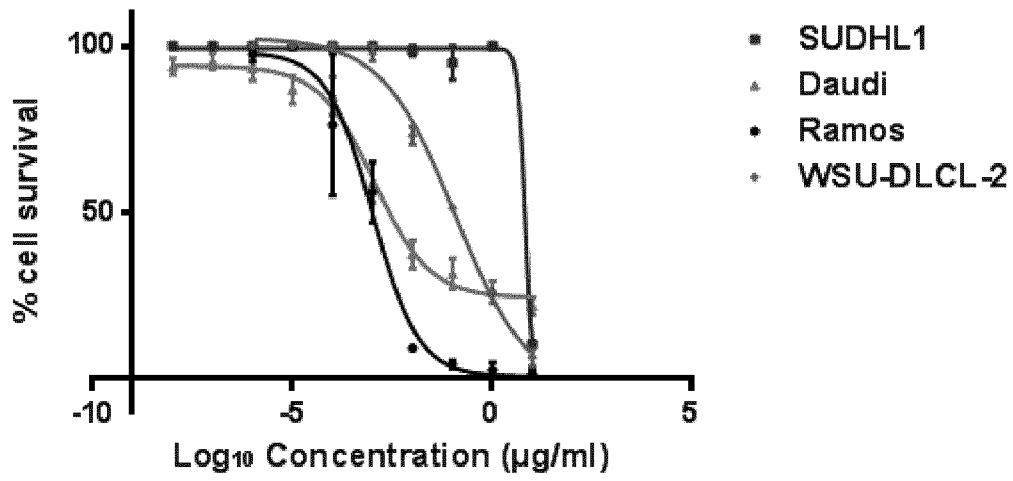


Figure 1

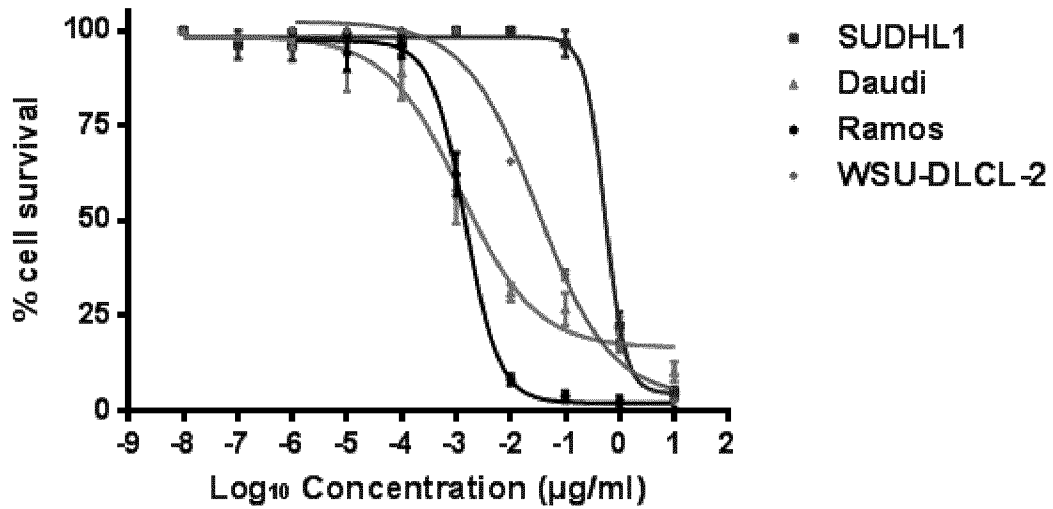


Figure 2

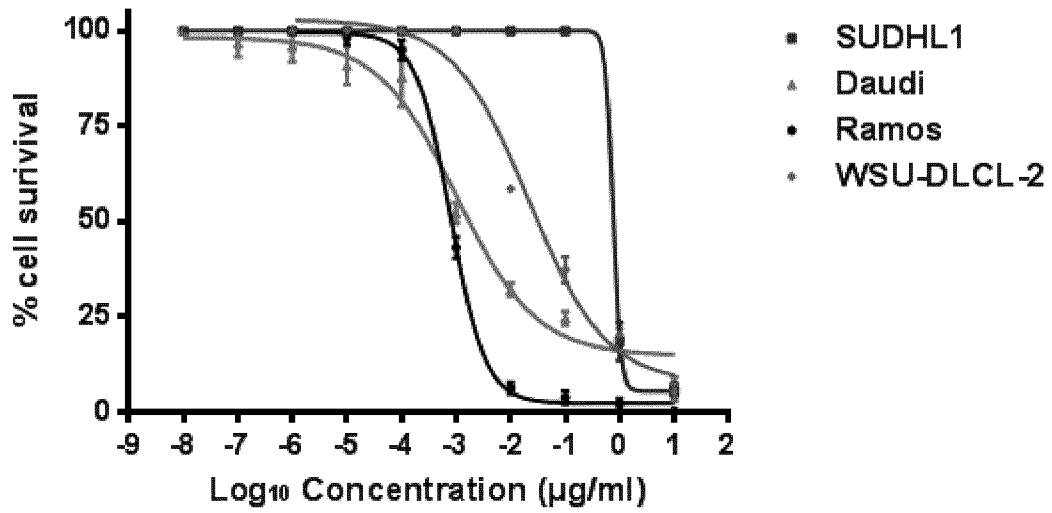


Figure 3

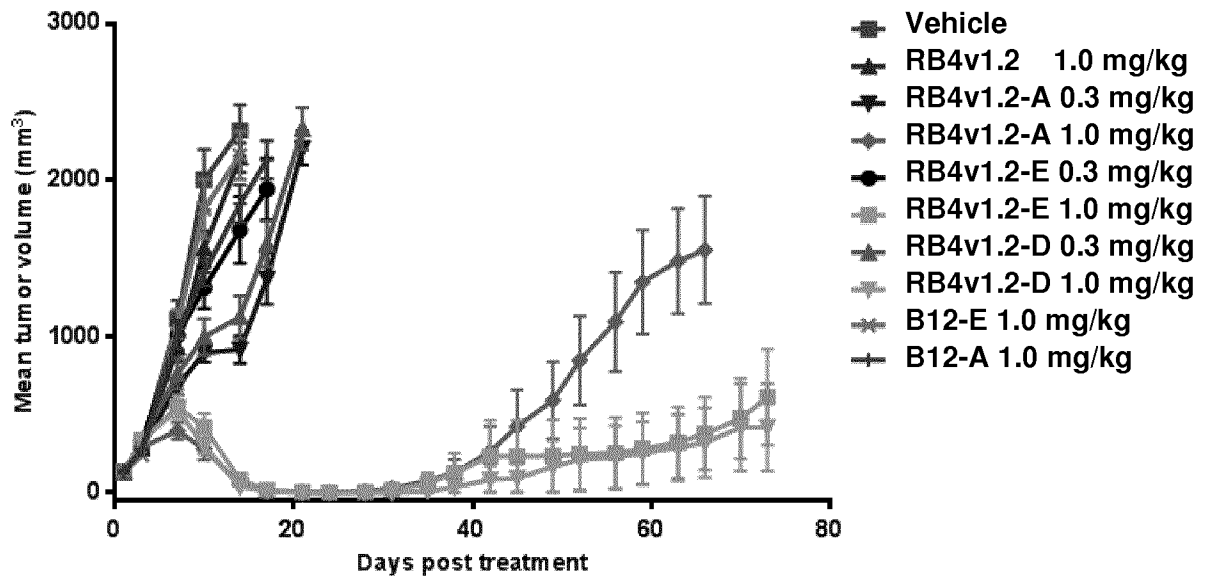


Figure 4

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No PCT/EP2013/071346
---

<b>A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> INV. A61P39/00      A61K47/48      A61P35/00 ADD.				
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC				
<b>B. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>				
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) A61K				
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched				
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) EPO-Internal, BIOSIS, EMBASE, WPI Data				
<b>C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b>				
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.		
Y	WO 2011/130616 A1 (SPIROGEN LTD [GB]; SEATTLE GENETICS INC [US]; HOWARD PHILIP WILSON [GB] 20 October 2011 (2011-10-20) Claims; Figure 1; page 50, line 27; page 93. -----	1-115		
Y	WO 2011/130613 A1 (SEATTLE GENETICS INC [US]; SPIROGEN LTD [GB]; HOWARD PHILIP WILSON [GB] 20 October 2011 (2011-10-20) Claims; page 50, line 27; page 128, lines 5-10; page 129, lines 3-4; pages 32-134 -----	1-115		
Y	WO 2010/095031 A2 (GLENMARK PHARMACEUTICALS SA [CH]; BLEIN STANISLAS [CH]; SKEGRO DARKO [ ] 26 August 2010 (2010-08-26) Figure 2, seq 1. -----	1-115		
----- -/--				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.				
* Special categories of cited documents : <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top; padding: 2px;">                     "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance                      "E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date                      "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)                      "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means                      "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed                 </td> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top; padding: 2px;">                     "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention                      "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone                      "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art                      "&amp;" document member of the same patent family                 </td> </tr> </table>			"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art "&" document member of the same patent family
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art "&" document member of the same patent family			
Date of the actual completion of the international search		Date of mailing of the international search report		
20 January 2014		05/02/2014		
Name and mailing address of the ISA/ European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016		Authorized officer  Bettio, Andrea		

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No

PCT/EP2013/071346

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 2008/022152 A2 (XENCOR INC [US]; BERNETT MATTHEW J [US]; CHU SEUNG YUP [US]; DESJARLAI) 21 February 2008 (2008-02-21) Figure 6a, Seq ID 9 -----	1-115
Y	US 2011/091372 A1 (GHAYUR TARIQ [US] ET AL) 21 April 2011 (2011-04-21) Pages 123-124; SEQ ID 40 -----	1-115
Y	EP 2 298 817 A1 (ALEXION PHARMA INC [US]) 23 March 2011 (2011-03-23) Page 116, SEQ 187 -----	1-115
A	US 2010/203007 A1 (LI WEI [US] ET AL) 12 August 2010 (2010-08-12) Claims 18, 19; paragraph 316; par. 541; 643-644 -----	1-115
A	WO 2012/112687 A1 (IMMUNOGEN INC [US]; FISHKIN NATHAN [US]; MILLER MICHAEL [US]; LI WEI []) 23 August 2012 (2012-08-23) Figures 7-11; paragraph 241 and 319 -----	1-115
A	ANTONOW: "Synthesis of DNA-interactive pyrrolo 2,1- c   1,4 benzodiazepines (PBDs)", CHEMICAL REVIEWS, vol. 111, no. 4, 1 January 2011 (2011-01-01), pages 2815-2864, XP055004244, ISSN: 0009-2665 abstract, page 2859 -----	1-115

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/EP2013/071346

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 2011130616 A1	20-10-2011	AU 2011239525 A1	01-11-2012
		CA 2795353 A1	20-10-2011
		CN 102971329 A	13-03-2013
		EP 2558475 A1	20-02-2013
		JP 2013523897 A	17-06-2013
		KR 20130040889 A	24-04-2013
		US 2013059800 A1	07-03-2013
		WO 2011130616 A1	20-10-2011
WO 2011130613 A1	20-10-2011	AU 2011239522 A1	01-11-2012
		CA 2795349 A1	20-10-2011
		CN 103068405 A	24-04-2013
		EA 201290838 A1	30-05-2013
		EP 2558127 A1	20-02-2013
		JP 2013523896 A	17-06-2013
		KR 20130038254 A	17-04-2013
		US 2013028919 A1	31-01-2013
WO 2011130613 A1	20-10-2011		
WO 2010095031 A2	26-08-2010	AU 2010215239 A1	15-09-2011
		CA 2753158 A1	26-08-2010
		CN 102421800 A	18-04-2012
		CO 6430469 A2	30-04-2012
		EA 201190132 A1	30-01-2013
		EP 2398829 A2	28-12-2011
		JP 2012518404 A	16-08-2012
		KR 20110122859 A	11-11-2011
		SG 173654 A1	29-09-2011
		US 2010215651 A1	26-08-2010
		WO 2010095031 A2	26-08-2010
WO 2008022152 A2	21-02-2008	AU 2007285976 A1	21-02-2008
		CA 2658557 A1	21-02-2008
		DK 2383297 T3	15-04-2013
		EP 2059536 A2	20-05-2009
		EP 2383297 A1	02-11-2011
		ES 2402591 T3	07-05-2013
		HR P20130314 T1	31-05-2013
		JP 2010500882 A	14-01-2010
		JP 2011182798 A	22-09-2011
		JP 2013177443 A	09-09-2013
		PT 2383297 E	15-04-2013
		RS 52775 B	31-10-2013
		SI 2383297 T1	28-06-2013
		US 2010272723 A1	28-10-2010
		US 2012082664 A1	05-04-2012
		WO 2008022152 A2	21-02-2008
US 2011091372 A1	21-04-2011	AR 078254 A1	26-10-2011
		AU 2010289527 A1	19-04-2012
		CA 2772628 A1	10-03-2011
		CN 102612524 A	25-07-2012
		CO 6511254 A2	31-08-2012
		DO P2012000055 A	31-07-2012
		EP 2473524 A2	11-07-2012
		JP 2013503607 A	04-02-2013
		KR 20120060877 A	12-06-2012
		PE 15302012 A1	22-12-2012



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/EP2013/071346

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
		RU 2012112550 A	10-10-2013
		SG 178602 A1	27-04-2012
		TW 201119673 A	16-06-2011
		US 2011091372 A1	21-04-2011
		UY 32870 A	28-02-2011
		WO 2011028811 A2	10-03-2011
-----			
EP 2298817	A1 23-03-2011	AT 550352 T	15-04-2012
		AU 2002359568 A1	17-06-2003
		CA 2468744 A1	12-06-2003
		DK 1461428 T3	04-06-2012
		EP 1461428 A2	29-09-2004
		EP 2298817 A1	23-03-2011
		ES 2384100 T3	29-06-2012
		JP 4723810 B2	13-07-2011
		JP 5054058 B2	24-10-2012
		JP 2005511706 A	28-04-2005
		JP 2009153527 A	16-07-2009
		JP 2012144551 A	02-08-2012
		PT 1461428 E	29-05-2012
		SI 1461428 T1	31-07-2012
		US 2003219861 A1	27-11-2003
		WO 03048321 A2	12-06-2003
-----			
US 2010203007	A1 12-08-2010	AU 2010210646 A1	11-08-2011
		CA 2750519 A1	12-08-2010
		CN 102365021 A	29-02-2012
		EP 2393362 A1	14-12-2011
		JP 2012516896 A	26-07-2012
		KR 20110120308 A	03-11-2011
		RU 2011136686 A	20-03-2013
		SG 173152 A1	29-08-2011
		US 2010203007 A1	12-08-2010
		US 2013266596 A1	10-10-2013
		US 2013302357 A1	14-11-2013
		WO 2010091150 A1	12-08-2010
-----			
WO 2012112687	A1 23-08-2012	AU 2012217719 A1	18-04-2013
		AU 2012231640 A1	02-05-2013
		CA 2824864 A1	27-09-2012
		CA 2825919 A1	23-08-2012
		EP 2675479 A1	25-12-2013
		EP 2675480 A1	25-12-2013
		EP 2675481 A1	25-12-2013
		SG 191955 A1	30-08-2013
		SG 191965 A1	30-08-2013
		TW 201309674 A	01-03-2013
		US 2012238731 A1	20-09-2012
		US 2012244171 A1	27-09-2012
		US 2013302359 A1	14-11-2013
		WO 2012112687 A1	23-08-2012
		WO 2012112708 A1	23-08-2012
		WO 2012128868 A1	27-09-2012
-----			